

AS/400e



Facsimile Support for AS/400 Programmer's Guide and Reference

Version 4

AS/400e



Facsimile Support for AS/400 Programmer's Guide and Reference

Version 4

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the information in "Notices" on page xi.

Second Edition (May 1999)

This edition replaces SC41-0656-00.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1998, 1999. All rights reserved.**

Note to U.S. Government Users — Documentation related to restricted rights — Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Figures	ix
Notices	xi
Trademarks	xii
About Facsimile Support for AS/400 Programmer's Guide and Reference (SC41-0656)	
Who should read this book	xiii
Conventions and terminology used in this book	xiii
Prerequisite and related information	xiv
How to send your comments	xv
<hr/>	
Part 1. Programmer's Guide	1
Chapter 1. Introducing the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product	
Fax Controllers	4
External Fax Controller Connection Types	4
The Integrated Fax Adapter	4
The 7852-400 Modem	4
PCI Based Integrated Remote Access Hardware	6
Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product Overview	6
Sending a Fax.	7
Receiving a Fax	9
Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products	11
Using the CVTFAXDOC Command	13
The Fax Transaction Log	13
Chapter 2. Outbound Fax Support.	
Sending Faxes	15
Using a Cover Page	17
Creating Your Own Cover Page	17
SNDFAX Output Queues	21
Spooled File Attributes and Send Fax	23
Creating a Fax Printer Device	24
Working with Outbound Faxes	25
The Work with Fax Output Queue Display	25
The Work with Fax File Attributes Display.	28
Using the Submit Fax (SBMFAX) Command.	30
Chapter 3. Inbound Fax Support	
Receiving Faxes	33
Receive Fax Data Queue.	33
Receive Database File and Receive Data Queue Authority	34
Working with Received Faxes	34
The Work with Faxes Display	35
Filing Received Faxes	36
Printing Received Faxes	37
Deleting Received Faxes	37
Chapter 4. Programming Considerations	
Updating the Fax Master List	39
Customer Database Layout	39

Sample Update Programs	40
Integrating the Enhanced Services Features.	41
Integration Method 1 for Interactive Applications	42
Integration Method 2 for Interactive Applications	44
Integration Method 3 for Batch Applications	47
Receive Fax Data Area	48
Integrating the CRTFAXNOTE Command	49
Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 5250 Viewer.	50
Setting Up the Workstation Environment	53
Chapter 5. Enhanced Services Security	55
Security Checking Scheme	55
Security	55
Commands	55
Fax Administration	55
Fax Master List	56
Authority Rules For All Fax Master List Functions	56
Fax Distribution List.	58
Authority Rules For All Fax Distribution List Commands	58
Outbound Faxes	60
Authority Rules For All Outbound Fax Commands.	60
Chapter 6. Fax Transaction Log Record Format	63
Chapter 7. Send and Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format	67
Send Fax Data Queue Message Format	67
Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format	68
Chapter 8. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problem Analysis	71
Messages	71
AS/400 Messages	71
External Fax Controller Messages	72
Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problems	72
Local Area Network Configuration Problems	72
Twinaxial Configuration Problems.	76
Problems Sending Faxes.	78
Fax Output Problems	81
Problems Printing Faxes	82
Miscellaneous Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problems	82
Other Helpful Hints for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product	84
Service Procedures	85
Preparing an Authorized Program Analysis Report (APAR)	85
Applying or Removing a Program Temporary Fix (PTF).	86
Enhanced Services Problem Analysis	87
Locating Error Messages	87
Outbound Problems.	88
Starting a Trace on the External Controller	90
Setting up a Trace	90
Facsimile Support for AS/400 Subsystem and Workstation Configuration Status	
Files	92
External Fax Controller	92
Integrated Fax Adapter	93
7852-400 Modem	94
PCI Hardware	95

Chapter 9. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Control Language Commands . . .	99
ADDFAXCRD (Add Fax Card) Command	100
Purpose	101
Restrictions	101
Parameters	101
Examples	107
ADDFAXDLE (Add Fax Distribution List Entry) Command	109
Purpose	109
Parameters	109
Example	109
CFGFAXSRV (Configure Fax Services) Command	111
Purpose	112
Parameters	112
Example	120
CHGDSTOWN (Change Fax Distribution List Owner) Command	120
Purpose	120
Parameters	121
Example	121
CHGFAXFA (Change Fax File Attributes) Command	122
Purpose	123
Required Parameter	124
Optional Parameters	124
Example	131
CHGFAXSDA (Change Fax System Directory Attributes) Command	131
Purpose	131
CHGMLEOWN (Change Master List Entry Owner) Command	132
Purpose	132
Parameters	132
Example	133
CHKFAXSTS (Check Fax Status) Command	133
Purpose	133
Parameters	133
Example	135
CRTFAXD (Create Fax Description) Command	136
Purpose	137
Parameters	137
Examples	140
CRTFAXDST (Create Fax Distribution List) Command	143
Purpose	144
Parameters	144
Example	144
CRTFAXMLE (Create Fax Master List Entry) Command	145
Purpose	145
Parameters	145
Example	147
CRTFAXNOTE (Create Fax Note) Command	148
Purpose	148
Parameters	149
Example	153
CRTFAXPRF (Create Fax Profile) Command	154
Purpose	154
Parameters	154
Example	154
CVTFAXDOC (Convert Fax Document) Command	155
Purpose	155
Parameters	155

Example	157
DLTFAX (Delete Fax) Command	157
Purpose	157
Restrictions	157
Parameters	157
Example	158
DLTFAXD (Delete Fax Description) Command	158
Purpose	158
Parameter	159
Examples	159
DLTFAXF (Delete Fax File) Command	160
Purpose	160
Required Parameter	160
Optional Parameters	160
Example	162
DSPFAX (Display Fax) Command	162
Purpose	162
Parameters	162
Example	163
Using the DSPFAX Command	163
DSPFAX Program Example	163
Common Errors When Displaying Faxes	164
EDTFAXDST (Edit Fax Distribution List) Command	165
Purpose	165
Parameters	165
Example	165
EDTFAXPRF (Edit Fax Profile) Command	165
Purpose	166
ENDFAXSPT (End Fax Support) Command	166
Purpose	166
Restrictions	167
Parameters	167
Examples	167
FILFAX (File Fax) Command	168
Purpose	168
Parameters	168
Examples	171
GRTDSTAUT (Grant Fax Distribution List Authority) Command	172
Purpose	172
Parameters	173
Example	173
GRTMLEAUT (Grant Master List Entry Authority) Command	173
Purpose	173
Parameters	174
Example	174
PRTFAX (Print Fax) Command	175
Purpose	175
Parameters	175
Examples	177
PRTFAXCFG (Print Fax Configuration) Command	179
Purpose	179
Parameters	180
Examples	180
PRTFAXSTS (Print Fax Status) Command	181
Purpose	181
Parameters	181

Example	184
RMVFAXCRD (Remove Fax Card) Command	184
Purpose	184
Restrictions	184
Parameters	184
Examples	185
RMVFAXDLE (Remove Fax Distribution List Entry) Command	185
Purpose	185
Parameters	186
Example	186
RMVFAXDST (Remove Fax Distribution List) Command	186
Purpose	186
Parameters	187
Example	187
RMVFAXMLE (Remove Fax Master List Entry) Command.	187
Purpose	187
Parameters	187
Example	188
SBMFAX (Submit Fax) Command	189
Purpose	190
Parameters	190
Example	197
SNDFAX (Send Fax) Command	198
Purpose	199
Parameters	199
Examples	206
STRFAXSPT (Start Fax Support) Command.	208
Purpose	208
Parameters	209
Examples	209
WRKFAX (Work with Faxes) Command	210
Purpose	210
Parameters	210
Example	211
WRKFAXDST (Work with Fax Distribution List) Command.	211
Purpose	211
WRKFAXFA (Work with Fax File Attributes) Command	212
Purpose	212
Required Parameter	212
Optional Parameters	212
WRKFAXMST (Work with Fax Master List) Command	213
Purpose	213
WRKFAXPRF (Work with Fax Profiles) Command	213
Purpose	213
WRKFAXQ (Work with Fax Output Queue) Command	214
Purpose	214
Optional Parameters	214
WRKRCVFAX (Work with Received Faxes) Command	215
Purpose	215
Parameters	216
WRKTSIRTG (Work with TSI Routing) Command	216
Purpose	216

Part 3. Appendixes 217

Appendix A. Integrated Fax Adapter Return Codes 219

Appendix B. Bar Codes Supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400	
Product	225
Bibliography	227
Index	229
Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You.	239

Figures

1. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Environment	3
2. Overview of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product	7
3. Facsimile Support for AS/400Outbound Process	9
4. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Inbound Process	11
5. Cover Page Printer File DDS Example	19
6. Example Fax Cover Page.	20
7. Work with Fax Output Queue Display	25
8. Work with Fax Output Queue Display of Output Queue QFFSND FAX, View 1	27
9. Work with Fax Output Queue Display of Output Queue QFFSND FAX, View 2	28
10. Work with Fax File Attributes Display	29
11. Work with Fax File Attributes Display	29
12. Work with Fax File Attributes Display	30
13. Work with Faxes Display	35
14. Work with Faxes Display of Member Names Only	36

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation

Software Interoperability Coordinator
3605 Highway 52 N
Rochester, MN 55901-7829
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, or other countries, or both:

Advanced Function Printing	Intelligent Printer Data Stream
Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking	IPDS
AFP	OfficeVision
Application System/400	OfficeVision/400
APPN	Operating System/2
AS/400	Operating System/400
Client Access	OS/2
IBM	OS/400
ImagePlus	400
InfoWindow	

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other company, product, and service names may be the trademarks or service marks of others.

About Facsimile Support for AS/400 Programmer's Guide and Reference (SC41-0656)

This book provides information on using the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product allows you to use industry-standard Group 3 fax node services to send or receive faxes to or from an AS/400 system.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product requires a **fax controller**. The fax controller can be any of the following:

- An **external fax controller**, typically a personal computer that is attached to the AS/400 system.

Personal computers that are attached to the AS/400 system control the telephone lines you use to send and receive faxes. Each personal computer operates as a dedicated fax controller supporting up to six fax telephone lines. (The number of slots available determines the number of lines a personal computer can support.)

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports most 80386, 80486, and Integrated PC Server microchannel or non-microchannel personal computers as external fax controllers. Personal computers you can use are those that support the following:

- Operating System/2 operating system
- Communications Manager/2 and Communications Manager/400 communications software
- GammaLink programmable fax adapters
- An **internal fax controller** in the AS/400 system. The Integrated Fax Adapter (feature 2664) that is installed in the AS/400 system is an internal fax controller.
- A 7852-400 modem that is asynchronously attached to the AS/400 system. Unless otherwise indicated, information that applies to the internal fax controller also applies to the 7852-400 modem.
- One of the controllers defined on the PCI Based Integrated remote access adapter
 - 8 port Analog (feature 2761)
 - 4 port Remote Basic rate ISDN (feature 2750 and feature 2751)

Throughout this guide, the term *fax controller* applies to either the internal or external fax controller.

Who should read this book

AS/400 system programmers or application programmers who are responsible for integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product into application programs should use this book. In addition, experienced AS/400 system users who want to send or receive faxes may find this book useful.

Conventions and terminology used in this book

This guide uses the following terms:

- *Fax support* refers to the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product or functions of this product.
- *Fax controller* applies to either the internal or external fax controller.

- *Personal computer* refers to any of the personal systems, or the ValuePoint personal computer, that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports as external fax controllers.
- *Fax* indicates both of the following:
 - The unit that converts images to signals over a telephone system
 - The transmitted image that is duplicated on paper

The fax process involves scanning the image at the transmitter, reconstructing the image at the receiving station, and duplicating the image on paper.

Prerequisite and related information

Before using the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, you should have some knowledge of the AS/400 system and the AS/400 control language (CL) commands. The following items describe other information you may need, depending on how you intend to use the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.

- To send faxes from the AS/400 system, you should be familiar with how the AS/400 system creates printed output and places it on the output queues.
- To receive and print faxes, you need a general understanding of the functions provided by the advanced function printing support that is available on the AS/400 system.
- To receive and file faxes, you need an understanding of the document processing functions that the OfficeVision for AS/400 product provides.
- To set up an external fax controller, you need a basic understanding of the personal computer and the OS/2 operating system.

Use this book with the following publications:

- *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*, which provides instructions for installing and setting up the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product
- *Facsimile Support for AS/400 User's Guide*, which provides information for using the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product

For information about Advanced 36 publications, see the *Advanced 36 Information Directory*, SC21-8292-01, in the AS/400 Softcopy Library.

For a list of related publications, see the “Bibliography” on page 227.

Use the AS/400 Information Center as your starting point for looking up AS/400 technical information. You can access the Information Center from the AS/400e Information Center CD-ROM (English version: SK37-2027) or from one of these Web sites:

<http://www.as400.ibm.com/infocenter>
<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/pubs/html/as400/infocenter.htm>

The AS/400 Information Center contains important topics such as logical partitioning, clustering, Java, TCP/IP, Web serving, and secured networks. It also contains Internet links to Web sites such as the AS/400 Online Library and the AS/400 Technical Studio. Included in the Information Center is a link that describes at a high level the differences in information between the Information Center and the Online Library.

For a list of related publications, see the “Bibliography” on page 227.

How to send your comments

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information. If you have any comments about this book or any other AS/400 documentation, fill out the readers' comment form at the back of this book.

- If you prefer to send comments by mail, use the readers' comment form with the address that is printed on the back. If you are mailing a readers' comment form from a country other than the United States, you can give the form to the local IBM branch office or IBM representative for postage-paid mailing.
- If you prefer to send comments by FAX, use either of the following numbers:
 - United States and Canada: 1-800-937-3430
 - Other countries: 1-507-253-5192
- If you prefer to send comments electronically, use one of these e-mail addresses:
 - Comments on books:
RCHCLERK@us.ibm.com
IBMMAIL, to IBMMAIL(USIB56RZ)
 - Comments on the AS/400 Information Center:
RCHINFOC@us.ibm.com

Be sure to include the following:

- The name of the book.
- The publication number of the book.
- The page number or topic to which your comment applies.

Part 1. Programmer's Guide

Chapter 1. Introducing the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product

The IBM Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is a general programming enabler that brings industry standard Group 3 fax communications to the AS/400 system. See the illustration in Figure 1. You use the control language (CL) interface that this product provides to integrate fax communications into existing or new AS/400 system applications.

The simple CL command interface for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product can function as a basic user interface for fax operations. With this product, AS/400 system users can send output to or receive input from any Group 3 fax machine. The programming interface resides on the AS/400 system; so users view fax nodes as if they are input/output (I/O) devices for the system.

With the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, outbound fax support becomes analogous to remote printing. Inbound fax support is similar to having a remote image scanner connected to the system. A *fax node* is any device that supports Group 3 fax communications. For example, a fax node can be any of the following:

- A fax machine
- A personal computer with a fax card
- Another AS/400 system that has the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product installed

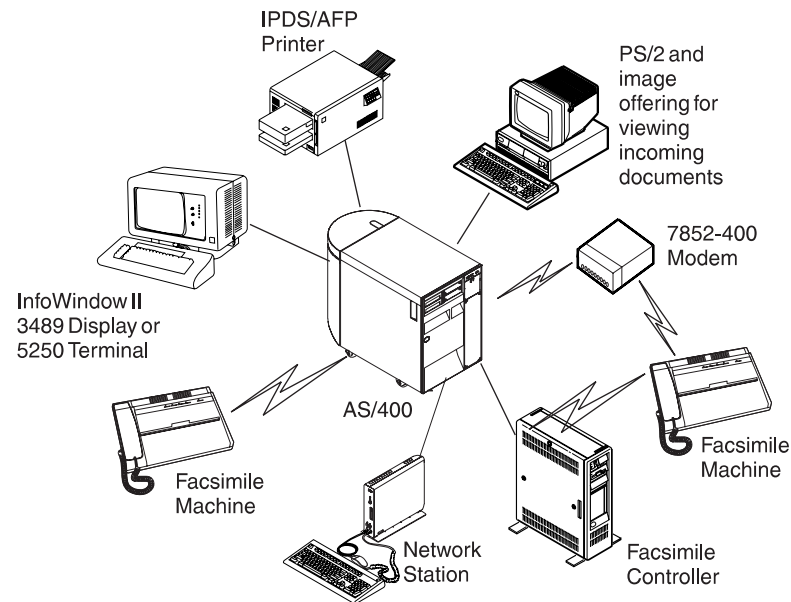


Figure 1. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Environment

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides call and send, as well as answer and receive Group 3 fax services. With the call and send service, the AS/400 system makes the telephone call and transmits data to a fax node. With the answer and receive service, the AS/400 system answers the telephone call and receives the data from a remote node.

Fax Controllers

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports several fax controllers, as follows:

- Personal computers. In this manual, personal computers that are being used as fax controllers are referred to as *external fax controllers*.
- Integrated Fax Adapters. The Integrated Fax Adapter is an adapter card in the AS/400 system. In this manual, an Integrated Fax Adapter is referred to as an internal fax controller.
- A 7852-400 modem. The 7852-400 modem is externally attached through a communications port on your AS/400 system.
- PCI Based Integrated Remote Access Adapters (Analog and ISDN).

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports any combination of these fax controllers. For details on the hardware requirements and programming requirements for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, see the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

External Fax Controller Connection Types

You can use one of the following connection types to connect external fax controllers to the AS/400 system.

- Local twinaxial connection
- Token-ring local area network (LAN)
- Ethernet** LAN

Depending on the model, each external fax controller can have from one to six connections to the public switched telephone network. Fax support makes each connection to the telephone network through a separate card in the external fax controller. The cooperative processing that the external fax controller provides complements the AS/400 product interface.

The Integrated Fax Adapter

You can use the Integrated Fax Adapter as a fax controller in place of, or in addition to, the external fax controller, the 7852-400 modem, or the PCI Based Integrated Remote Access hardware. When used with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, the Integrated Fax adapter provides basic send and receive Group 3 Fax Communications.

The Integrated Fax Adapter (feature 2664) is an AS/400 IOP that comes with two telephone ports. Either one or both of the ports can be configured to send and/or receive fax information.

The 7852-400 Modem

You can use a 7852-400 modem as a fax controller in place of, or in addition to, the external fax controller, the Integrated Fax Adapter, and the PCI Based Integrated Remote Access hardware. When integrated with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, the 7852-400 modem provides basic send and receive Group 3 fax communications.

The 7852-400 modem externally attaches to your AS/400 system by an Enhanced EIA RS232 V.24 communications cable to the AS/400 communications port. The 7852-400 modem is already configured for operating with your AS/400 system when it is shipped. For instructions on installing the 7852-400 modem, see the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

If you plan to use the 7852-400 modem, you should be aware of the following:

- The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports only one 7852-400 modem for faxing. Although you can create more than one fax description for a 7852-400 modem, you can start only one modem. If your applications require more than one line, use an Integrated Fax Adapter or external fax controller.
- The 7852-400 modem does not support Error Correction Mode (ECM). ECM may reduce error rates associated with fax communications by allowing a page to be sent or received again if the page contains too many errors. ECM is supported by the Integrated Fax Adapter and external fax controller.

Support for the 7852-400 modem analyzes fax documents to remove any incorrect image data received. If excessive errors are found, a message is sent to the QFAXOPR message queue. If the quality of the received data is not acceptable, the document must be sent again.

- You can use the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product to send SNA character string (SCS) spooled files, such as OfficeVision documents, through the 7852-400 modem starting with version 4 release 3 (V4R3) of OS/400.
- The 7852-400 modem uses Host Print Transform (HPT) and could affect your system performance. For more information about the 7852-400 modem, see Appendix A in the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Limitations of the 7852-400 modem are typical of many low-cost PC fax applications that are available today. If you need high-volume (multiple telephone lines) or mission-critical fax communications that require additional error recovery capabilities (ECM), you should consider using the Integrated Fax Adapter or an external fax controller. See the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 User's Guide* for a table that compares the functional capabilities of the Integrated Fax Adapter, external fax controller, and the 7852-400 modem.

The Add Fax Card (ADDFAXCRD) and Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) commands support the 7852-400 modem. The CRTFAXD command allows you to create a fax description for the 7852-400 modem. Use the CRTFAXD command to enter the names of the asynchronous line, controller, and device description. You must also enter a resource name for the asynchronous (V.24) communications port to which you attached the modem. To set up a fax description for the 7852-400, you must enter a link type of *ASYNC.

Switching between Fax and Electronic Customer Support on the 7852-400 Modem

You can use the 7852-400 modem for Electronic Customer Support (ECS) data communications as well as fax communications. You can use only one form of communications (ECS or fax) at any time.

Switching from ECS to Fax Communications: To switch from ECS to fax communications, you must do the following:

- Vary off the ECS line, controller, and device.
- Vary on the line, controller, and device that are associated with the 7852-400 fax description.

- Use the Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command to start fax support for the 7852-400 fax controller.

You do not need to change the switch settings on the 7852-400.

The asynchronous line, controller, and device names for the 7852-400 are the same names as specified on the CRTFAXD command, as previously described. The default ECS names are as follows:

- Line name: QESLINE
- Controller name: QESCTL
- Device name: QESPAP

Switching from Fax to ECS Communications: To switch from fax to ECS communications, you must do the following:

- Use the End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command to end fax support for the 7852-400 modem.
- Vary off the fax line, controller, and device.
- Vary on the line, controller, and device that are associated with ECS communications.

You do not need to change switches on the 7852-400 modem.

PCI Based Integrated Remote Access Hardware

You can use the PCI Based Integrated Remote Access hardware as a fax controller in place of, or in addition to, the Integrated Fax adapter, the 7852-400 modem, or the external fax controller. When integrated with Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, the PCI Based Integrated Remote Access hardware provides basic send and receive Group 3 fax communications.

The PCI Based Integrated Remote Access has the following options:

- 8 Port Analog (feature 2761)
You can configure 1 to 8 ports as fax controllers.
- 4 Port Remote Access Basic rate (ISDN) (feature 2750 and feature 2751)

Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product Overview

Figure 2 on page 7 provides a high-level overview of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. The product uses the Operating System/400 (OS/400) and Operating System/2 (OS/2) operating systems. Within the OS/400 operating system, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product relies on both the printer support that is provided by data management and the intersystem communications function (ICF).

The OS/2 environment requires communication software. The Communications Manager/400 (CM/400) Fax Feature and Communications Manager/2 (CM/2) are supported. The advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) handles communication between the AS/400 system and the fax controllers.

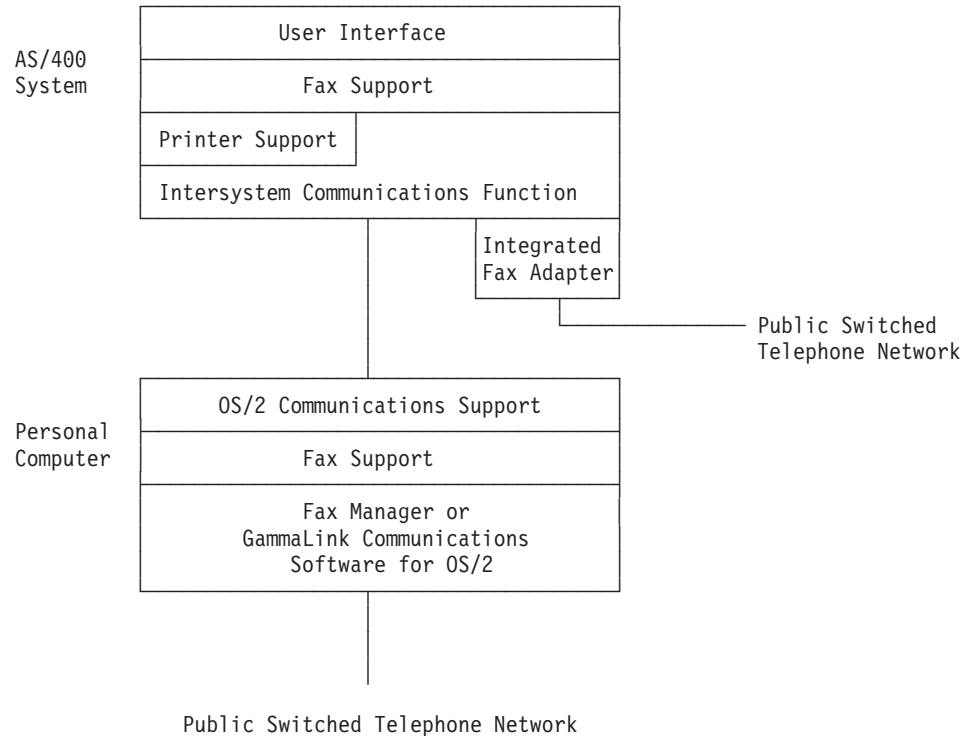


Figure 2. Overview of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product

The user interface to the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product can be your own application or the Enhanced Services. The Enhanced Services, provided with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, provide a user menu interface to the most frequently used fax functions.

Sending a Fax

The outbound fax function, provided by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, is an extension of the AS/400 system's print support. The fax controller emulates an Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS) printer. Enhanced Services or a user application creates the data to be sent, by creating a spooled file as though that data were to be printed. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product can send spooled files that any of the following produce:

- Any user application that uses either program-described or externally-described printer files
- Spooled files created by the OfficeVision Print Document (PRTDOC) command
- The Client Access virtual printer function

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product has the same printing capabilities as Advanced Function Printing (AFP) printers. Faxed spooled files may contain text objects that use fixed-pitch or typographic fonts, graphics objects, image objects, or bar code objects. When you fax spooled files, the AS/400 system uses host resident font character sets for the fonts that are specified in the spooled files.

Figure 3 on page 9 illustrates the process of sending a fax through the Send Fax (SND FAX) command interface. Enhanced Services also provides a Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command that performs essentially the same function, but allows you

more flexibility. The application (either a user application or Enhanced Services) creates a spooled file, and then submits a SNDFAX command. The required parameters for the SNDFAX command are the spooled file name and the telephone numbers of the destination fax nodes. Optional parameters on this command allow users to do the following:

- Include a cover page with the fax
- Specify a specific cover page to be sent with the fax
- Specify the text for the cover page
- Specify the date and time of day the fax is to be sent
- Specify fine or normal mode
- Specify Host Print Transform to generate the fax
- Specify a user message queue and data queue to contain completion status for the SNDFAX
- Specify a specific fax description to use for sending the fax
- Input user defined fields
- Specify whether or not to use the transform process

In addition to these functions, the SBMFAX command allows you to do the following:

- Send a fax to a previously defined destination or a fax distribution list
- Receive acknowledgments in the mail
- Fax documents from folders
- Specify a command to create a spooled file to be faxed

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product send process does the following:

1. Creates the cover page
2. Transmits the cover page and spooled file to the fax controller
3. Converts the cover page and spooled file to the Group 3 fax format
4. Transmits the cover page and spooled file to the destination fax node
5. Updates the QFAXOPR message queue
6. Updates the fax transaction log database file
7. Sends completion messages to the user data queue and message queue

Interactive users receive outbound fax call completion status through the send fax message queue. AS/400 application programs receive outbound fax call completion status through the send fax data queue. In the Facsimile Support for AS/400 outbound process, the telephone call is not made until all of the pages of the spooled file have been converted to the International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication (ITU-T) (formerly known as the International Consultative Committee on Telegraph and Telephone) Group 3 fax format. This keeps the length of the telephone call and, more importantly, the telephone network charge for the call, at a minimum.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides support to work with outbound faxes. The Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ) command displays a list of spooled files on any output queue. This command provides an option to submit the SNDFAX command for listed spooled files. If the spooled files are waiting to be faxed, the WRKFAXQ command provides options to display or change the fax file attributes.

Outbound fax support also provides a Delete Fax File (DLTFAXF) command. DLTFAXF deletes spooled files on the output queues that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product uses.

Enhanced Services also provides a function for checking the status of outbound faxes. The Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command allows you to monitor a fax from the time the spooled file is created to the time notification is received that the fax was successfully sent. Users can resend faxes that were unsuccessful.

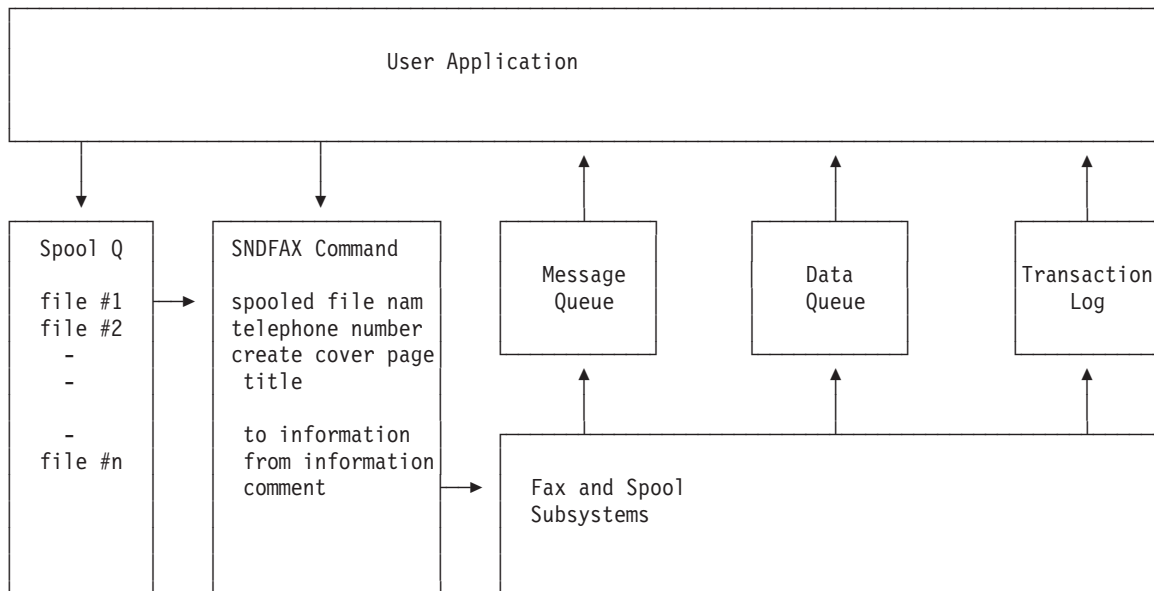


Figure 3. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Outbound Process

Receiving a Fax

Facsimile Support for AS/400 inbound fax processing makes transmission of data from a fax node to the AS/400 system similar to an image scan operation. Figure 4 on page 11 shows what occurs when the system receives an inbound fax. Figure 4 also indicates the Facsimile Support for AS/400 functions that are used to process the inbound fax data. Faxes that are received on any of the telephone lines that are associated with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product are placed in a member within an AS/400 database file. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product receive capability runs as a background job providing unattended reception of inbound faxes.

When configuring a fax controller, you must specify a database file and data queue for each fax telephone line. When the fax controller receives a fax, a member is added to the database file. A message is also sent to the receive fax data queue (if you select the Receive fax data queue option when adding a fax card). The message in the receive fax data queue contains the qualified database file name, member name, and other information about the received fax.

This function provides real-time notification to AS/400 system applications for further processing of inbound fax data. The ability to specify the database file to store inbound faxes and to identify a data queue on a per-telephone-line basis allow the application to apply the integrated security capabilities of the OS/400 operating system to inbound faxes.

The format for all received fax data is *noncoded binary image*. To make fax data usable, a control structure is added. Applications that process the data must understand this control structure. The format of the received fax data in the database file member is an IBM internal format that does not have this control structure.

The fax data in the database file member cannot be used by applications. Only the Facsimile Support for AS/400 File Fax (FILFAX) and Print Fax (PRTFAX) commands can process the fax data. The FILFAX command performs the following steps to process the fax data:

1. Extracts the data from a member in a received fax database file
2. Transforms the data to an IBM document format
3. Copies the document into an OS/400 folder

The IBM document formats that the FILFAX command supports are:

- Revisable-Form:Document Content Architecture (RFT:DCA). This format is compatible with the OfficeVision for AS/400 product.
- Mixed Object:Document Content Architecture (MO:DCA). This is an interchange format that is part of Common Communications Support (CCS) in Systems Application Architecture (SAA). The ImagePlus/400 products commonly use this format.
- Revisable-Form:Document Content Architecture for Fax (RFT:DCAFAX). This type enables you to use Facsimile Support for AS/400-supplied image programs to view the document.
- Mixed Object:Document Content Architecture for Fax (MO:DCAFAX). This type enables you to use Facsimile Support for AS/400-supplied image programs to view the document.
- TIFF. This type enables you to view received faxes in Lotus Domino and with most web browsers.
- TIFFFAX. This type enables you to view received faxes with the SAP (AL) viewer.

MO:DCAFAX and RFT:DCAFAX are two document types that are created to allow integration of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 products. ImagePlus/400 uses MO:DCA, while the OfficeVision for AS/400 uses RFT:DCA. These document types do not define a new data stream. MO:DCAFAX documents contain the MODCA data stream, and RFT:DCAFAX documents contain the RFTDCA data stream.

For more information on these document types, see “Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products” on page 11.

For all formats, each page of a document that fax support creates is an Image Object Content Architecture (IOCA) function set 10 bilevel image. Like FILFAX, the PRTFAX command performs the following steps:

1. Extracts the fax data from the database file member
2. Converts the data to the correct format for processing by the AFP Utilities for AS/400 (AFP)
3. Creates a spooled file on the specified output queue

Printing documents the FILFAX command creates or spooled output the PRTFAX command creates requires an AFP printer that can print IOCA function set 10 images.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides support to work with received faxes. The Work with Faxes (WRKFAX) or Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX) command displays a list of the received faxes. These commands provide options to file, print, and delete faxes on the list.

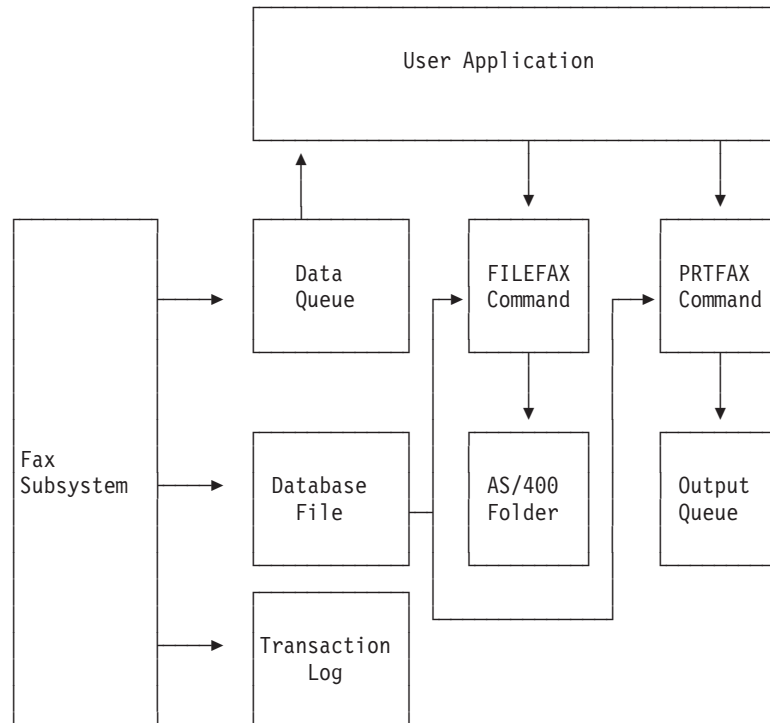


Figure 4. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Inbound Process

Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products

To enable the OfficeVision for AS/400 product to work with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, you must use the Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV) command. Select the *ENABLEOV400 option, and specify *ENABLE for the ENBLOV400 parameter.

Notes:

1. This change takes place without starting or ending the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.
2. If you have applications already enabled for the OfficeVision for AS/400 product, you must use the Application Enabler Support, Version 2 Release 3 or later, to enable them. When the CFGFAXSRV command enables the OfficeVision for AS/400 product, the Version 2 Release 2 applications are disabled.
3. The 7852-400 modem supports faxing of OfficeVision documents from version 4 release 3 (V4R3) and greater.

This allows you to send an item as a fax document through the following OfficeVision functions:

- Send a note

- Forward or replay to a mail item
- Send a document
- Send a form

From the OfficeVision Work with Mail and Work with Documents in Folders displays, you can perform the following tasks for RFT:DCAFAX and MO:DCAFAX documents:

- Send
- View
- Edit
- Print

When you select any of these options for MO:DCAFAX or RFT:DCAFAX documents, the fax support handles the request.

The edit function starts the office editor to edit the document. Although you cannot view the image data, you can change the fax by adding additional text. You can then fax the document again. The edit function does not support MO:DCAFAX documents.

The print function supports printing of RFT:DCA, RFT:DCAFAX, and MO:DCAFAX documents.

When you select the *OfficeVision View* option to view a RFT:DCAFAX or MO:DCAFAX document, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product handles the view request. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product performs the following steps:

1. Displays the fax, if you are using an IBM InfoWindow II 3489 Modular Display Station or a Network Station at release 3 or greater. If not, the next step is performed.
2. Calls the user-supplied program that is specified on the View Fax Image parameter of your fax profile. You can use this program to start a PC-based software product capable of viewing either a RFT:DCA document (in the case of an RFT:DCAFAX document) or a MO:DCA document (in the case of a MO:DCAFAX document).

See the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 User's Guide* for more information on the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Viewer.

The following table shows the supported OfficeVision functions and document types. In addition to these OfficeVision functions, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports the following functions for all document types:

- Send a note
- Forward and reply to a mail item
- Send form
- Send document

Function	RFT:DCA	RFT:DCAFAX	MO:DCA	MO:DCAFAX	*TIFF *TIFFFAX
View (option 5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Edit (option 2)	Y	Y	N	N	N
Print (option 6)	Y	Y	N	Y	N
Print Options (option 9)	Y	Y	N	Y	N
Mail View	Y	Y ¹	N	Y ¹	N

Function	RFT:DCA	RFT:DCAFAX	MO:DCA	MO:DCAFAX	*TIFF *TIFFFAX
Mail Edit	Y	Y	N	N	N

¹ Only if an image-capable view program is available or you are using an InfoWindow II 3489 display or a Network at release 3 or greater.

MO:DCAFAX allows you to use PC-based programs, such as AFP Workbench, to view documents from OfficeVision displays. These programs support most office functions (excepting edit). If you previously filed fax documents as MO:DCA, RFT:DCA, or RFT:DCAFAX documents, you can use the Convert Fax Document (CVTFAXDOC) command to convert them to MO:DCAFAX for use with the OfficeVision for AS/400 product.

Using the CVTFAXDOC Command

You can use the CVTFAXDOC command to convert documents from one type to another. CVTFAXDOC handles only image objects within each document. The CVTFAXDOC function removes text, graphics, bar codes, fonts, and other non-image objects during conversion. These objects do not appear in the converted document. The CVTFAXDOC command fully supports only Facsimile Support for AS/400 documents. The CVTFAXDOC command attempts to convert documents from other sources, but the conversion may not complete successfully.

Note: Documents filed as *TIFF or *TIFFFAX cannot be converted with the CVTFAXDOC command.

The Fax Transaction Log

Fax support maintains a database file that contains a log of the operations that were performed. You can use the transaction log to do the following:

- Produce reports on fax usage
- Track outbound fax transmissions to individual users for billing and accounting purposes
- Check the completion status of a particular fax operation

An entry is made in the fax transaction log when the AS/400 system receives a fax, and also when you submit a SNDFAX, FILFAX, or PRTFAX command. See Chapter 6. Fax Transaction Log Record Format, for a description of the transaction log record format.

Chapter 2. Outbound Fax Support

This chapter describes the following:

- How to send a fax
- How to create a fax cover page
- The output queues the outbound fax support uses
- How spooled file attributes affect sending faxes
- How to use the work with outbound fax support

Sending Faxes

You can use the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product to send a fax in any of the following ways:

- Using option 5 (Outbound Fax Commands) on the Facsimile Support for AS/400 main menu
- Using the Send Fax (SNDFAX) or Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command, either interactively or from a batch application
- Using the Create Fax Note (CRTFAXNOTE) command
- Using functions of the OfficeVision for AS/400 product, such as Send a Note or Send a Document
- Using the Send Document (SNDDOC) or Send Network Spooled File (SNDNETSPLF) commands over the AnyMail/400 Mail Server Framework
- Using a personal computer printer device set up to submit faxes
- Using the Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ) command

This chapter explains how to use the outbound fax commands to send a fax. For details on using the Facsimile Support for AS/400 main menu, see the *û*.

Fax support sends an outbound fax from a printer output file that is on an output queue. Any operation that creates a spooled file can produce outbound faxes. The following are examples:

- Application programs that write data to program files or externally-described printer files
- The Print Document (PRTDOC) command that prints office documents
- The Print Advanced Function Printer Data (PRTAFPDTA) command that prints Advanced Function Printing data streams

Outbound faxes can contain any output data that can be printed on an Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS)-capable 3816 printer. This data includes image objects, graphics objects, bar codes, and text objects that use either fixed-pitch or typographic fonts. (For a list of bar codes that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 supports, see "Appendix B. Bar Codes Supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product" on page 225. When you fax spooled files, the AS/400 system substitutes host-resident font character sets for font-global identifiers (FGID) that are specified in the spooled files.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports only 240-pel fonts. The font substitution that is performed for outbound faxes is the same as for a 3825 printer. See the *Printer Device Programming* book for an explanation of printer-resident to host-resident font character set mapping for a 3825 printer.

After the system creates the spooled printer output, use the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command to send the outbound fax. Parameters on the SNDFAX command specify the spooled file that contains the outbound fax. You also use this command to list the telephone numbers of the fax nodes where you are sending the fax. “SNDFAX (Send Fax) Command” on page 198 provides details on how to specify the SNDFAX command.

At the user’s option, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates a cover page that is placed in front of the outbound fax as described in “Using a Cover Page” on page 17. Use the parameters on the SNDFAX command to specify *title*, *to*, *from*, and *comment* information that is placed on the cover page.

Users can specify a date and time for sending the fax. They can also specify a fax description to send the fax.

If the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is not active when you enter the SNDFAX command, the specified spooled file stays in the QFFSNDFAX output queue in the QUSRSYS library. Fax support releases the spooled file when you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.

Fax support always sends error messages for requests from the SNDFAX command to the QFAXOPR message queue. These messages indicate the following unsuccessful send conditions:

- If fax support cannot successfully convert the specified spooled file to fax format, it sends a single completion message to the QFAXOPR message queue. This message indicates that the SNDFAX command failed.
- If fax support successfully converts the specified spooled file to fax format, it sends a completion message to the QFAXOPR message queue for each telephone call that failed.

You can request that fax support send both successful and unsuccessful SNDFAX completion messages to a user message queue, a data queue, or both. The message queue can provide interactive users with the completion status of a send request. A program can use the data queue to determine the send request completion status.

Note: The Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command checks or resets the status only for outbound faxes that you used the SBMFAX command to submit. The CHKFAXSTS command does not work if you used the SNDFAX command.

Before you send a fax, you should know:

- The telephone number of the fax node for each recipient of the fax.
- The name of the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent.
- The name of the job that created the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent.
- The spooled file number of the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent.
- Whether to send the fax in fine or normal mode.
- Whether to create a cover page. If you are using a cover page, you should know:
 - The cover page printer file name
 - The *to* line information for each recipient
 - The *title*, *from*, and *comment* line information for the cover page
- The date and time the fax is to be sent.
- How completion messages for the send request are to be handled.

- The fax controller name, if you are using a specific controller.
- Whether you plan to specify additional information (user-defined fields) that is related to the fax.
- Whether you want to use Host Print Transform when sending the fax.

Using a Cover Page

You can create a cover page during the send operation. To do so, specify CRTCVRP(*YES) on the SNDFAX command or specify 1=Yes for Create cover page in your fax profile. The cover page appears in front of the fax data in the spooled file. The fax cover page includes text information that you specified on the SNDFAX command, plus the date, time, and number of pages. Printer file QPFFCVP in the QFAX library is the default cover page printer file. Table 1 explains the contents of the default cover page.

Table 1. Default Cover Page Format

Line Number	Column Number	Content
39	24	Up to 40 characters specified in the TITLE parameter of the SNDFAX command.
41	24	Up to 40 characters specified on the first value in the TO parameter of the SNDFAX command.
42	24	Up to 40 characters specified on the second value in the TO parameter of the SNDFAX command.
43	24	Up to 40 characters specified on the third value in the TO parameter of the SNDFAX command.
45	24	Up to 40 characters specified on the first value in the FROM parameter of the SNDFAX command.
46	24	Up to 40 characters specified on the second value in the FROM parameter of the SNDFAX command.
47	24	Up to 40 characters specified on the third value in the FROM parameter of the SNDFAX command.
49	24	Up to 40 characters specified in the COMMENT parameter of the SNDFAX command.
53	24	DATE:
53	32	The system date when the fax was sent. The date is in the format specified by the system value QDATFMT. The date separator used is specified by the system value QDATSEP. See the <i>Work Management</i> book for a description of these system values.
54	24	TIME:
54	32	The system time when the fax was sent. The time is in the format hh:mm:ss.
55	24	PAGES:
55	32	The number of pages in the fax. This page count includes the cover page.

Creating Your Own Cover Page

If you do not want to use the default cover page that fax support provides, you can create your own. To send your customized cover page with outbound faxes, you must specify your cover page printer file on the CVRPRTF parameter of the SNDFAX command. The CVRPRTF parameter allows each person or group who uses the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product to send a customized cover page when they send a fax.

When you create your own cover page printer file, be sure your record-format and the field-level information match the default cover page printer file. Be sure that the record format name is CVRPAG, and that you include all of the fields that are shown in Table 2. Facsimile Support for AS/400 ignores any other record formats in the data description specifications. You can change the print position of any field, but do *not* change the output buffer position of the fields.

Note: You cannot use the Position keyword to specify the location of the fields in the cover page. You must specify the line and position in the *Location* column of the specification. This identifies where the beginning of each field appears on the cover page.

When you create a cover page printer file, specify DEVTYPE(*AFPDS) and LVLCHK(*NO). "Cover Page Printer File Example", provides an example of how to create a fax cover page printer file.

Table 2. Field Description for Record CVRPAG in QPFFCVP

Field Name	Data Type	Field Length	Buffer Position Output
TITLE	Open	40	1
TO1	Open	40	41
TO2	Open	40	81
TO3	Open	40	121
FROM1	Open	40	161
FROM2	Open	40	201
FROM3	Open	40	241
CMT	Open	40	281
CVPDAT	CHAR	8	321
CVPTIM	CHAR	8	329
PAGES	ZONED	30	337

Note: A field data type of CHAR can be substituted for the fields defined with a data type of Open unless double-byte character set (DBCS) characters are to be printed.

Using Data Description Specifications

The printer file support that is provided with the OS/400 operating system when you use data description specifications (DDS) allows you to do the following:

- Print the text fields that are specified on the SNDFAX command at any position on the page
- Print additional fields
- Use special fonts and code pages

See the *DDS Reference* for detailed instructions for coding the cover page printer file DDS.

Cover Page Printer File Example: The following example shows data description specification (DDS) for a fax cover page printer file.

```

*
* File Name: FAXCVP (Fax Cover Page Printer File)
*
*
A      R CVRPAG
A      TITLE      400      39 15'TITLE  :'
A      TITLE      400      39 24TEXT('Title Line')
A      TITLE      400      41 15'TO    :'
A      T01        400      41 24TEXT('To Line 1')
A      T02        400      42 24TEXT('To Line 2')
A      T03        400      43 24TEXT('To Line 3')
A      FROM1      400      45 15'FROM  :'
A      FROM1      400      45 24TEXT('From Line 1')
A      FROM2      400      46 24TEXT('From Line 2')
A      FROM3      400      47 24TEXT('From Line 3')
A      FROM3      400      49 15'COMMENT:'
A      CMT        400      49 24TEXT('Comment')
A      CMT        400      53 15'DATE  :'
A      CVPDAT     8A      53 24TEXT('Date Line')
A      CVPDAT     8A      54 15'TIME  :'
A      CVPTIM     8A      54 24TEXT('Time Line')
A      CVPTIM     8A      55 15'PAGES  :'
A      PAGES      3 0     55 24TEXT('Pages Sent')

```

Figure 5. Cover Page Printer File DDS Example

The following Create Printer File (CRTPRTF) command specifies the following:

- The printer file that is created is named FAXCVP in the USERLIB library.
- The source file that contains the data description specifications (DDS) to be used to create the printer file is QDDSSRC in the USERLIB library. The name of the source file member is the same as the name of the printer file being created.
- The type of data stream that is created for the printer device file is Advanced Function Printing data stream (AFPDS).
- The output page size is 66 lines in length by 85 characters per line.
- The text that is printed on the page is not rotated.
- Fax support is not to check the level identifiers when the program opens the printer device file.
- Users are given object-operational and read authority to the file.

```

CRTPRTF FILE(USERLIB/FAXCVP) SRCFILE(USERLIB/QDDSSRC) DEVTYPE(*AFPDS)
        PAGESIZE(66 85) PAGRTT(0) LVLCHK(*NO) AUT(*USE)

```

Fax support creates the printer file. SNDFAX commands that specify CRTCVRP(*YES) and CVRPRTF(USERLIB/FAXCVP) use this new printer file to produce a cover page when sending a fax. Figure 6 on page 20 shows how the cover page would look when you use the FAXCVP printer file.

line number 39	TITLE : SNDFAX command title line
line number 41	TO : SNDFAX command to line 1
line number 42	SNDFAX command to line 2
line number 43	SNDFAX command to line 3
line number 45	FROM : SNDFAX command from line 1
line number 46	SNDFAX command from line 2
line number 47	SNDFAX command from line 3
line number 49	COMMENT: SNDFAX command comment text
line number 53	DATE : date
line number 54	TIME : time
line number 55	PAGES : number of pages

Figure 6. Example Fax Cover Page

Using Overlays on the Cover Page

You can specify an overlay with the cover page printer file to customize the fax cover page. With an overlay, you can include your company logo, letterhead, a signature, or any other artwork on your fax cover page.

To use the AFP Utilities for AS/400 product to create an overlay for your fax cover page, do the following:

1. If you plan to use a logo or any other artwork, create and save the logo or artwork as a page segment.
2. Use the AFP Utilities for AS/400 product to create an overlay to include the page segment. In the overlay, you can also define and use different fonts for the text of your cover letter.
3. When you use the CRTPRTF command to create the cover page printer file, specify the overlay on the FRONTOVL parameter. For example, to use an overlay that is named OVLNAM in library OVLLIB on the cover page in the previous DDS example, the CRTPRTF command would be as follows:

```
CRTPRTF FILE(USERLIB/FAXCVP) SRCFILE(USERLIB/QDDSSRC) DEVTYPE(*AFPDS)
        PAGESIZE(66 85) PAGRTT(0) LVLCHK(*NO) AUT(*USE) FRONTOVL(OVLLIB/OVLNAM)
```

Notes:

1. The page segment must be in a library that is in the system or user portion of your library list when you issue the Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command.
2. If you move the page segment to a library in the library list after you started the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, you must use the End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command to end the product. Then, use the Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command to restart it.

IBM Operating System/2 or Windows Applications: The following example shows how you can use an overlay from an IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2) or Windows application on your fax cover page.

Note: You must first install the Client Access AFPDS driver.

This example uses the following object names:

AFPOBJ

The library that contains the AFP objects

PF400 The physical file that temporarily stores an overlay

AFPFLR

The folder that contains the overlay files from the personal computer

OVLNAME.OVL

The name of the PC file that the AFPDS printer driver creates

OVLNAME

The name of the overlay object on the AS/400 system

Create an overlay, as follows:

1. Print the overlay from your OS/2 or Windows application. To set up your printer, choose the following options:
 - Print to file
 - Type = overlay
2. When the system prompts you for the file name, enter OVLNAME.OVL.
3. Copy the OVLNAME.OVL file to the AS/400 folder, AFPFLR.
4. Enter the following command to create a temporary physical file to contain the overlay:


```
CRTPF FILE (AFPOBJ/PF400) RCDLEN(32766) LVLCHK(*NO) MAXMBRS(*NOMAX)
```
5. Enter the following command to copy the overlay to the temporary physical file:


```
CPYFRMPCD FROMFLR(AFPFLR) TOFILE(AFPOBJ/PF400) FROMDOC(OVLNAV.N.OVL)
TRNTBL(*NONE) TOMBR(OVLNAV.N)
```
6. Enter the following command to create the overlay:


```
CRTOVL OVL(AFPOBJ/OVLNAV.N) FILE(AFPOBJ/PF400) MBR(*OVL)
```

SNDFAX Output Queues

Send fax support creates and uses the following output queues. These queues reside in the QUSRSYS library. Submit fax support also uses these queues.

QFFSNDFAX

The output queue where the spooled files that contain faxes are to be placed. The Send Fax (SNDFAX) command places spooled files on this output queue. If you place files on this queue through methods other than

the SNDFAX command, fax support does not send these files. This is because you have not specified the send information on the SNDFAX command.

QFFSNDSAV

The output queue where fax support places spooled files that contain previously sent and saved faxes. Fax support places spooled files on this output queue when the file specifies to save after printing it and the fax was successfully sent to all recipients. Save after print is one of the spooled file attributes. You can specify save after print with the SAVE(*YES) parameter on the following commands:

- Create Printer File (CRTPRTF)
- Change Printer File (CHGPRTF)
- Override with Printer File (OVRPRTF)

Note: Fax support deletes spooled files that do not specify save after printing by containing faxes that were successfully sent that do not specify after they were successfully sent.

QFFSNDERR

The output queue that contains spooled files for faxes that were not successfully sent. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product always places unsuccessfully sent spooled files on this queue.

You can delete spooled files on these queues, or change the status of the file to HLD (Held). If you delete a file from the QFFSNDFAX queue, fax support does not send the fax. If you hold a file on the QFFSNDFAX queue, fax support does not send the fax until you release the file.

The user data attribute of a file in the QFFSNDFAX queue indicates the following:

- A value of *TIMED indicates that the file is scheduled to be sent at a specific date or time.
- A value of *CURRENT indicates that you specified the default send date and time on the SNDFAX command.

The OS/400 operating system automatically sorts spooled files on an output queue. The order of the files on an output queue is determined in the following order:

1. The status of the spooled file
2. Output priority
3. Time stamp
4. Schedule parameter value
5. Spooled file number.

See the *Data Management* for a detailed description of how the AS/400 system sorts spooled files on an output queue.

Fax support processes outbound faxes according to the following:

- In the order that is determined by the value in the user data attribute of the spooled file
- How the operating system sorts the spooled files on the QFFSNDFAX output queue

Spooled files must have a status of ready (RDY) to be processed. Files with a user data value of *TIMED are checked first. If the system date and time are after the

scheduled fax date and time, the file is sent. For example, assume two spooled files have the same output priority. A file with a user data value of *TIMED and a fax date and time that has passed is sent before a spooled file with a user data value of *CURRENT.

In addition to these output queues, send fax support stores send information from the SNDFAX command as follows:

- In the QFFSNDFAX user queue
- In the QAFFSNDF database file

The QUSRSYS library contains both the user queue and the database file. The information on this queue and in this file is in an internal format. Fax support provides no end-user interfaces to the information on this queue or in this file.

Spooled File Attributes and Send Fax

The following spooled file attributes have an effect on the operation of a send fax request. You specify spooled file attributes on the Create Printer File (CRTPRTF), Override with Printer File (OVRPRTF), or Change Spooled File Attributes (CHGSPLFA) commands. In general, if an attribute is not in the following list, the send fax command operates like a spool writer that is writing the file to a 3816 IPDS printer.

Attribute
Description

ALIGN

If alignment is set to *YES, it is changed to *NO and the fax is sent.

COPIES

Specifies the number of copies of the fax to be sent to each recipient of the fax.

DRAWER

Specifies the size of the fax page that is sent. Values for DRAWER have the following meaning:

Drawer	Media Type	Size
1	Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.50 x 11 in)
2	Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.50 x 14 in)
3	A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 in)
*E1	B4	257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in)

Notes:

1. If you fax an OfficeVision document and you want to specify a drawer, you must make the document drawer selection when you use the OfficeVision editor to create the document. The drawer you select using the OfficeVision editor overrides that specified using the OVRPRTF or CHGPRTF commands.
2. To select drawer *E1, specify paper source 5 (Envelope feed).
3. If you select drawer *E1 and the receiving fax machine does not support B4 media, the receiving fax machine may print the fax on smaller media or the fax may not be sent.

DUPLEX

If duplex is set to *YES, it is changed to *NO and the fax is sent.

FILESEP

Specifies the number of separator pages that are sent with each fax.

Note: When using the 7852-400 modem, do not use separator pages if the spooled file is of type *AFPDS.

MULTIUP

This value must be 1. Fax support does not allow multiple pages per side when sending a fax.

PAGERANGE

Specifies the starting and ending page of the spooled file that is sent in the fax. The total number of pages in an outbound fax cannot exceed 999. The total number of pages is calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{Total Pages} = ((\text{NP} + \text{NS}) * \text{NC}) + \text{NCP}$$

NP The number of pages specified in the starting and ending values of the PAGERANGE parameter.

NS The number of separator pages that is specified by the FILESEP parameter.

NC The number of copies that is specified by the COPIES parameter.

NCP The number of cover pages.

RESTART

This value must be *STRPAGE. Fax support does not allow restart when sending a fax.

SAVE If SAVE(*YES) is specified and the fax is successfully sent, the spooled file containing the fax is placed on the QFFSNDSAV output queue after the send operation has completed. If you specified SAVE(*NO) and the fax is successfully sent, fax support deletes the spooled file that contains the fax after the send operation has completed.

USRDTA

Used by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product to indicate if the fax is a current or timed send. Fax support sets this field to *CURRENT or *TIMED.

Note: Do not change the user data.

Creating a Fax Printer Device

This section provides you with the command to create a dummy printer device.

For spooled files you want to fax, you can create a dummy printer device. You can then direct all of your spooled files to this dummy printer device before submitting the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command. This device should not be a physical printer. It does not need to be varied on. You can create this dummy device with the following command on the AS/400 system:

```
CRTDEVPRT DEVD(name) DEVCLS(*LCL) TYPE(*IPDS) MODEL(0)
          AFP(*YES) PORT(x) SWTSET(y) FONT(011)
```

You provide some name for the DEVD parameter, a valid and unused port number (x), and a switch setting (y).

Working with Outbound Faxes

The SNDFAX command sends an outbound fax from a printer output file that is on an output queue. After a SNDFAX command is processed, you can start any of the following commands:

- Work with Fax File Attributes (WRKFAXFA)
- Change Fax File Attributes (CHGFAXFA)
- Delete Fax File (DLTFAXF)

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides a list interface for outbound faxes. Through this interface, you can use the Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ) command to display a list of spooled files on any output queue. When appropriate, you can start the SNDFAX, WRKFAXFA, CHGFAXFA, and DLTFAXF commands.

The Work with Fax Output Queue Display

The following example shows how you can manipulate individual spooled files that are listed on the Work with Fax Output Queue display.

Type the following command at any command line:

```
WRKFAXQ OUTQ(USERLIB/SPOOLFILES)
```

The Work with Fax Output Queue display appears as shown in Figure 7.

Work with Fax Output Queue								
Queue:	SPOOLFILES			Library:	USERLIB			
Type options, press Enter.								
1=Submit fax 3=Hold 4=Delete 5=Display 6=Release								
Opt	File	FNbr	Job	User	Number	User Data	Sts	Pty
	QPJOBLOG	2	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045596		RDY	5
	QPJOBLOG	1	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045217		RDY	5
	QPJOBLOG	1	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045216		HLD	5
	QPSUPRTF	2	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045580		HLD	5
	QPSUPRTF	3	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045580		HLD	5
	QPSUPRTF	4	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045580		HLD	5
	QPSUPRTF	5	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045580		HLD	5
	QPSUPRTF	6	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045580		HLD	5
	QPSUPRTF	7	JOBNAM1	PJK0126	045580		HLD	5
								More...
Parameters or command								
==>								
F3=Exit			F4=Prompt		F5=Refresh		F9=Retrieve	
F18=Bottom			F20=QFAXOPR		F12=Cancel		F17=Top	
			F22=Printers					

Figure 7. Work with Fax Output Queue Display

Type an option number in the *Opt* column next to each spooled file entry with which you want to work. If you type numbers in the entry fields of several files before pressing the Enter key or F4 (Prompt), the specified functions are performed on the files in the order they are displayed.

You can select the following options:

1=Send fax or Submit fax

Use this option to send the spooled file as a fax. This option appears as either Send fax or Submit fax, depending on the fax environment you specified in your fax profile.

- If you have a fax profile and are using the enhanced environment, this option appears on your display as Submit fax. Choosing this option runs the SBMFAX command. See “Using the Submit Fax (SBMFAX) Command” on page 30, for more information.
- If you have a fax profile and are not using the enhanced environment, this option appears on your display as Send fax. Choosing this option runs the SNDFAX command and uses the information that you specified in your fax profile.
- If you do not have a fax profile, this option appears as Send fax. Choosing this option runs the SNDFAX command and uses the defaults for that command.

3=Hold

Use this option to hold the spooled file on the output queue. When you choose this option, the system runs the Hold Spooled File (HLDSPLF) command.

4=Delete

Use this option to delete the spooled file from the output queue.

5=Display

Use this option to display the data in the spooled file. When you choose this option, the system runs the Display Spooled File (DPSPLF) command.

6=Release

Use this option to release the spooled file. When you choose this option, the system runs the Release Spooled File (RLSSPLF) command.

Figure 7 on page 25 shows the options that are available for all output queues except for the send fax output queue (QFFSNDFAX).

Since the send fax output queue includes spooled file information and fax control information, different options are available. You can display two views. As an example, Figure 8 and Figure 9 show the options and two views for the send fax output queue.

```

                                Work with Fax Output Queue
Queue:  QFFSNDFAX      Library:  QUSRSYS

Type options, press Enter.
  2=Change  3=Hold  4=Delete  5=Display  6=Release  8=Attributes

Opt  File           FNbr  Job           User           Number  User Data  Sts  Pty
-----
QPSUPRTF      10  JOBNAM1      PJK0126      044278  *CURRENT  RDY  5
QPJOBLOG       2  JOBNAM2      PJK0126      045596  *CURRENT  RDY  5
QPJOBLOG       1  JOBNAM2      PJK0126      045217  *CURRENT  HLD  5
QPJOBLOG       1  JOBNAM3      PJK0126      045216  *CURRENT  HLD  5
QPSUPRTF       2  JOBNAM3      PJK0126      045580  *CURRENT  HLD  5
QPSUPRTF       3  JOBNAM3      PJK0126      045580  *TIMED    HLD  5
QPSUPRTF       4  JOBNAM4      PJK0126      045580  *CURRENT  HLD  5
QPSUPRTF       5  JOBNAM4      PJK0126      045580  *TIMED    HLD  5
QPSUPRTF       6  JOBNAM4      PJK0126      045580  *CURRENT  HLD  5
                                                More...

Parameters or command
====>
F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F9=Retrieve  F11=View 2  F12=Cancel
F17=Top  F18=Bottom  F20=QFAXOPR  F22=Printers

```

Figure 8. Work with Fax Output Queue Display of Output Queue QFFSNDFAX, View 1

Options 3, 4, 5, and 6 are the same as described for Figure 7. The other options that are available for the QFFSNDFAX output queue are:

2=Change

Use this option to change the fax file attributes and some spooled file attributes. When you choose this option, the system runs the Change Fax File Attributes (CHGFAXFA) command.

8=Attributes

Use this option to display the fax file attributes and some spooled file attributes. When you choose this option, the system runs the Work with Fax File Attributes (WRKFAXFA) command.

The fax spooled files are displayed on the QFFSNDFAX output queue, as shown in Figure 9 on page 28. To display more detail on each of these files, press F11 (View 2).

```

                                Work with Fax Output Queue

Queue:  QFFSNDFAF      Library:  QUSRSYS

Type options, press Enter.
  2=Change  3=Hold  4=Delete  5=Display  6=Release  8=Attributes

Opt  File      User      Pages  Send Date  Send Time  Mode      Cvr Page
-----
QPSUPRTF  PJK0126    15  *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *FINE     *NO
QPJOBLOG  PJK0126    2   *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *FINE     *NO
QPJOBLOG  PJK0126    1   *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *FINE     *NO
QPJOBLOG  PJK0126    1   *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *FINE     *NO
QPSUPRTF  PJK0126    4   *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *FINE     *NO
QPSUPRTF  PJK0126    3  10/31/93  09:23:53  *FINE     *YES
QPSUPRTF  PJK0126    1   *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *NORMAL   *NO
QPSUPRTF  PJK0126    1  12/18/93  12:30:00  *NORMAL   *NO
QPSUPRTF  PJK0126    1   *CURRENT  *CURRENT  *FINE     *NO
                                                More...

Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F9=Retrieve  F11=View 1  F12=Cancel
F17=Top  F18=Bottom  F20=QFAXOPR  F22=Printers

```

Figure 9. Work with Fax Output Queue Display of Output Queue QFFSNDFAF, View 2

The Work with Fax File Attributes Display

The following example shows how you can display the fax attributes of an individual fax spooled file.

Type the following command:

```
WRKFAXFA FILE(WEEKDATA) JOB(000416/PJK0126/JOBNAM1) SPLNBR(*ONLY)
```

Figure 10, Figure 11, and Figure 12 show the Work with Fax File Attributes display. Pressing F13 (Change) from the Work with Fax File Attributes display calls the CHGFAXFA command, including all the fax attributes that are associated with this spooled file.

```

Work with Fax File Attributes

Job . . . . . : JOBNAM1      File . . . . . : WEEKDATA
User . . . . . : PJK0126     Number . . . . : 2
Number . . . . : 000416

Status . . . . . : READY
Output queue . . . . . : QFFSNDFAX
Library . . . . . : QUSRSYS
Output priority . . . . . : 5
Save file after send . . . . . : *NO
Send at time . . . . . : 12:30:00
Send at date . . . . . : 10/31/93
Transmission mode . . . . . : *FINE
Create cover page . . . . . : *YES
Cover page printer file . . . . . : QPFFCVP
Library . . . . . : QFAX
Send fax message queue . . . . . : MSGQNAME
Library . . . . . : PJKLIB

Press Enter to continue.

F3=Exit  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=Change
More...

```

Figure 10. Work with Fax File Attributes Display

Press the Page Down key to display more information.

```

Work with Fax File Attributes

Job . . . . . : JOBNAM1      File . . . . . : WEEKDATA
User . . . . . : PJK0126     Number . . . . : 2
Number . . . . : 000416

Send fax data queue . . . . . : DTAQNAME
Library . . . . . : PJKLIB
Title line for cover page . . . : 'Weekly data report
From lines:
From line 1 for cover page . . : 'PJK
From line 2 for cover page . . : 'Company ONE
From line 3 for cover page . . : '*BLANK
Comment text for cover page . . : 'For your information
Fax description . . . . . : *ANY

Press Enter to continue.

F3=Exit  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=Change
More...

```

Figure 11. Work with Fax File Attributes Display

Press the Page Down key again. Another Work with Fax File Attributes display appears.

```

                                Work with Fax File Attributes
Job . . . . . : JOBNAM1           File . . . . . : WEEKDATA
User . . . . . : PJK0126         Number . . . . . : 2
Number . . . . . : 000416

Send to:
Telephone number . . . . . : 1507286999
To line 1 for cover page . . : WLW
To line 2 for cover page . . : Company TWO
To line 3 for cover page . . : Redridge, MO

Telephone number . . . . . : 1319582999
To line 1 for cover page . . : John Doe
To line 2 for cover page . . : Company THREE
To line 3 for cover page . . : Rainy Meadows, OH

                                Bottom

Press Enter to continue.

F3=Exit  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=Change

```

Figure 12. Work with Fax File Attributes Display

The displayed attributes are the same as those that you specified on the SNDFAX command.

Note: You can display a maximum of 25 destinations.

Using the Submit Fax (SBMFAX) Command

The Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command performs the same basic functions as the SNDFAX command, but allows you more flexibility. You can use the SBFAX command interactively on the command line, from a menu, from a user application, or through the Fax OfficeVision Documents interface.

The SBFAX command uses the fax master list for information about the destination of a fax, or allows you to specify temporary destinations. You can select a maximum of 500 destinations for each fax request.

Note: Attempting to fax to 500 destinations could result in a performance impact on your AS/400 system.

Two different fax request types are available through the SBFAX command: interactive and batch. The TYPE parameter on the SBFAX command determines the fax request type.

Interactive

If you specify *INT for the TYPE parameter, you can use the various functions that are provided on the Submit Fax display to control the fax request.

Batch

If you specify *BCH for the TYPE parameter, you do not see the Submit Fax display. The parameters of the SBFAX command control the fax request.

After you submit a fax, you can use the Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command to check the status of the fax transmission.

Chapter 3. Inbound Fax Support

This chapter describes the following:

- How to work with received faxes
- How to file a received fax
- How to print a received fax
- How to delete a received fax

Receiving Faxes

Fax support processes inbound faxes in jobs in the fax subsystem. These jobs start when you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. How the AS/400 system receives inbound faxes depends on whether you are using an Integrated Fax Adapter (IFA) or a fax controller.

- As soon as the IFA receives an inbound fax, the IFA immediately uploads the fax to the AS/400 system.
- The external fax controller receives the entire fax, temporarily stores the fax until the transmission completes, and then uploads the fax to the AS/400 system. Because the external fax controller can store faxes, it can continue to receive faxes after the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product ends.

When the AS/400 system receives an inbound fax, fax support stores the fax in a database file member. Fax support uses the qualified name of the database file to store the fax. Use the FAXFILE parameter on the Add Fax Card (ADDFAXCRD) command to specify the file name. Fax support creates this database file when it receives the first fax from a fax card.

Fax support creates the name of the database file member from the system date and time. A text description is assigned to the database file member. This description consists of the phrase *Facsimile from*, concatenated with the transmitting subscriber identification (TSI) of the sending fax node. If the sending fax node does not provide a TSI, the text description reads *Facsimile from*.

You can work with the inbound faxes in the database file, place them in a document in a folder, or print them on a printer. These tasks are described later in this chapter. When printing an inbound fax, you must use a printer that supports Advanced Function Printing.

It is possible for errors to prevent fax support from placing an inbound fax in the specified database file. If such errors occur, fax support attempts to write the fax to the QAFFRCV default fax database file. This file resides in the QUSRSYS library. If errors prevent placing the fax in the default database file, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product does not upload the fax to the AS/400 system. Instead, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product ends the receive function for the fax controller attempting to upload the fax.

Receive Fax Data Queue

In addition to placing the inbound fax in a database file member, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product optionally sends a message to a data queue. Use the

FAXRCVDQ parameter of the ADDFAXCRD command to specify the qualified name of the data queue you want to use. The message that is sent to this data queue contains the following:

- The qualified database file name
- The member name where the fax resides
- The number of pages in the fax

See “Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format” on page 68 for a detailed description of the data queue message.

If errors prevent fax support from sending a message to the specified data queue, fax support sends the message to the default data queue, QFFRCVDQ, in the QUSRSYS library. If errors prevent fax support from sending a message to the default data queue, fax support does not upload the fax to the AS/400 system. The receive function for the fax controller attempting to upload the fax ends.

When started, Enhanced Services monitors the default receive data queue, QFFRCVDQ, and information in that data queue is no longer available to other applications. If Enhanced Services is enabled on your system, use the Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV) command to create a duplicate receive data queue. Your application must monitor the duplicate receive data queue.

Receive Database File and Receive Data Queue Authority

When you create the receive database file and the receive data queue, they have a public authority of *ALL. You can change the authority level for the receive database file and data queue after creating them. The user who enters the Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command to start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product must be authorized to use the database file, data queue, and the libraries that contain them.

This user must have at least the following authority:

- Read-data and add-data authority to the library containing the receive database file
- Object-operational, object-management, object-existence, and add-data authority to the receive database file
- Read-data and add-data authority to the library containing the receive data queue
- Object-operational and add-data authority to the receive data queue

If the user does not have the required authority, fax support cannot upload faxes and the receive function for the controller ends.

Working with Received Faxes

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides a list of received faxes. To display a list of inbound fax members, use the Work with Faxes (WRKFAX) command. The “WRKFAX (Work with Faxes) Command” on page 210 provides details on how to specify the WRKFAX command.

You can also use the Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX) command to view a list of all the faxes that are received on your AS/400 system. For details on the WRKRCVFAX command, see “WRKRCVFAX (Work with Received Faxes) Command” on page 215. For information on how to use this command, see the *ù*.

After receiving a fax file, you can do any of the following:

- Use the File Fax (FILFAX) command to file the fax in a document in a folder.
- Use the Print Fax (PRTFAX) command to print the fax file.
- Use the Delete Fax (DLTFAX) command to delete the fax file.

For more information on these commands, see Chapter 9. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Control Language Commands.

The Work with Faxes Display

Figure 13 shows an example of the Work with Faxes display. You can enter options and press function keys to manipulate the individual faxes that are listed on the display.

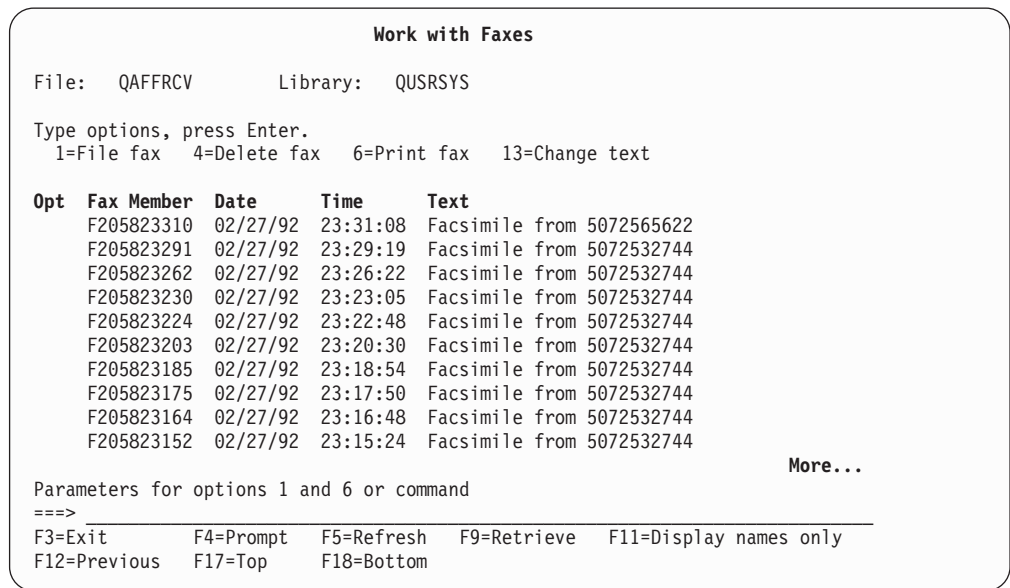


Figure 13. Work with Faxes Display

Type an option number in the *Opt* column next to each entry you want to work with. You may type option numbers in the entry fields for more than one member. If you do so, pressing the Enter key or F4 (Prompt) performs the specified functions on the members in the order they appear on the display.

The options you can select are:

1=File fax

Use this option to place the fax in a document in a folder. When you choose this option, the FILFAX command runs.

4=Delete fax

Use this option to delete the database file member that contains the fax. When you choose this option, the DLTFAX command runs.

6=Print fax

Use this option to print the fax. When you choose this option, the PRTFAX command runs.

13=Change text

Use this option to change the textual description of the database file member that contains the fax.

To increase the number of faxes that are listed on a single display, press F11 (Display names only). Figure 14 shows an example.

Work with Faxes

File: QAFFRCV Library: QUSRSYS

Type options, press Enter.
1=File fax 4=Delete fax 6=Print fax 13=Change text

Opt	Fax Member	Opt	Fax Member	Opt	Fax Member	Opt	Fax Member
	F205823310		F205823140		F205823055		F205822585
	F205823291		F205823133		F205823052		F205815560
	F205823262		F205823125		F205823040		F205815532
	F205823230		F205823121		F205823032		F205814471
	F205823224		F205823115		F205823024		F205811195
	F205823203		F205823103		F205823020		F205810105
	F205823185		F205823095		F205823014		F205809093
	F205823175		F205823084		F205823013		F205809092
	F205823164		F205823075		F205823005		F205807311
	F205823152		F205823072		F205822590		F205806434
							More...

Parameters for options 1 and 6 or command
==>

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F9=Retrieve F11=Display descriptions
F12=Previous F17=Top F18=Bottom

Figure 14. Work with Faxes Display of Member Names Only

Example

To display a list of all database file members in the default fax file QAFFRCV, type the following command and press the Enter key:

```
WRKFAX FAXMBR(*ALL)
```

Filing Received Faxes

After fax support receives a fax and stores it in a fax database file, you can file the fax in a document in a folder. To do so, use option 1 (File fax) on the Work with Faxes or Work with Received Faxes display.

To file the fax in RFTDCA, RFTDCAFAX, MODCA, MODCAFAX, *TIFF, or *TIFFFAX format, use the FILFAX command. "FILFAX (File Fax) Command" on page 168 provides details on how to specify the FILFAX command. For more information on the document types that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports, see "Receiving a Fax" on page 9.

As fax support files each page of the fax, it formats the fax image for that page to fit the area that is defined by the PAPERSIZE parameter. In some cases, the fax image may not fit into the area that is defined by the PAPERSIZE parameter. In these cases, fax support trims or scales the fax image according to the MAPVAL parameter values.

Before you file a fax, you should know:

- The name of the document that is to contain the fax.
- The name of the existing folder where the document is to be filed.
- The qualified name of the database file and member that contains the fax.
- The converted document format of the fax to be filed.
- The paper size to be used when formatting the fax.
- How the fax is formatted in the area that is defined by the paper size.
- Whether fax support should delete the member that contains the fax from the database file after filing the fax.

Printing Received Faxes

After receiving a fax (placing it in a fax database file), you can print it in the following ways:

- Use option 6 (Print fax) on the Work with Faxes or Work with Received Faxes display.
- Use the Print Fax (PRTFAX) command to print it on a printer that supports compressed-image printing through Advanced Function Printing (AFP).

“PRTFAX (Print Fax) Command” on page 175 provides details on how to specify the PRTFAX command.

As each page of the fax prints, fax support formats the fax image for that page for the area that is defined by the PAPERSIZE parameter. The MAPVAL parameter specifies how fax support trims or scales the fax image if the image does not fit in the area that is defined by the PAPERSIZE parameter.

Before you print a fax, you should know:

- The qualified name of the database file and member that contains the fax you want to print.
- The name of the printer where the fax is to be printed.
- The number of fax copies to be printed.
- The starting and ending page numbers of the fax to be printed.
- The paper size to be used when formatting the fax.
- The way the fax is formatted in the area that is defined by the paper size.
- Whether to delete from the database file the member that contains the fax after the fax is printed.

Deleting Received Faxes

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides several methods of deleting received faxes:

- Use option 4 (Delete fax) on the Work with Faxes or Work with Received Faxes display.
- Use the Delete Fax (DLTFAX) command to delete incoming faxes from a fax database file.

“DLTFAX (Delete Fax) Command” on page 157 provides details on how to specify the DLTFAX command.

The DLTFAX parameter of both the FILFAX and PRTFAX commands specifies whether to delete a received fax after filing or printing it. See page 170 and page 177. For more information on these commands, see “Chapter 9. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Control Language Commands” on page 99.

Chapter 4. Programming Considerations

This chapter contains General-Use Programming Interface (GUPI) and associated guidance information. This chapter also provides information you need to integrate the Enhanced Services features in an application. The following sections show you:

- How to update the fax master list from existing database files
- Sample integration methods
- How a user program can use a receive-fax data area to handle inbound faxes
- A sample program to integrate the Create Fax Note (CRTFAXNOTE) command into an application program
- Information on integrating an image-view program into an application

Updating the Fax Master List

You can update the fax master list database. To do so, you can use the Work with Fax Master List (WRKFAXMST) command to enter information. You can also write a program to use data that already exists in your databases.

The following example shows how you can update the fax master list with information in a customer database. This example provides the following program information:

- File layout of sample customer database
- Sample program to show how to take information from the customer database and build a fax master list
- Sample CL program to call the Create Fax Master List Entry (CRTFAXMLE) command to update the fax master list.
- RPG sample program to perform a pseudo-code function

Customer Database Layout

You must first decide what fields in the master customer database to use to update the fax master list. Table 3 describes the fields in our sample master customer database.

Table 3. Master Customer Database

Field Name	Size	Type	Description
CUSNAM	30	Character	Customer name
CUSNBR	10	Numeric	Customer number
ADDR	30	Character	Customer address
CITY	30	Character	City
STATE	2	Character	State
ZIPCOD	9	Numeric	Zip code
PHONE	10	Character	Telephone number
FAX#1	10	Character	Main fax number
FAX#2	10	Character	Account payable fax number
FAX#3	10	Character	Account receivable fax number

The master customer database has more than one fax number. You can handle multiple fax numbers through multiple calls to the CRTFAXMLE command. In the previous example, for each customer record, three entries (one for each fax number) appear in the fax master list.

Sample Update Programs

The following is an example of how to update the fax master list database that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product uses when processing an outbound fax request.

Sample Update Flow

In this example, the program reads the customer database. For each of the three fax numbers in the record, the program calls the FMLECLP program. The FMLECLP program runs the Create Fax Master List Entry (CRTFAXMLE) command to update the fax master list. You could write this program in any high-level language (HLL) that you have on your AS/400 system.

```
OPEN Customer Master File

READ Customer Master database
DO WHILE NOT END OF FILE (Customer Master Database)
  MOVE Customer Name (CUSNAM) to Fax Destination Name (DEST)
  MOVE Customer Number (CUSNBR) to Identifier (IDEN)
  IF FAX#1 is not empty
    IF FAX#1 is greater than 9999999 (area code is included)
      MOVE a '1' before the FAX Number
    ENDIF
    IF '9' is required in dialing
      MOVE a '9' before the FAX Number
    ENDIF
    MOVE '*DEFAULT' to ENTRY
    MOVE updated FAX#1 to FAXNBR in FAX Master List Database
    CALL FMLECLP(DEST IDEN ENTRY FAXNBR ...)
  ENDIF
  IF FAX#2 is not empty
    IF FAX#2 is greater than 9999999 (area code is included)
      MOVE a '1' before the FAX Number
    ENDIF
    IF '9' is required in dialing
      MOVE a '9' before the FAX Number
    ENDIF
    MOVE 'Accounts Payable' to ENTRY
    MOVE updated FAX#2 to FAXNBR in FAX Master List Database
    CALL FMLECLP(DEST IDEN ENTRY FAXNBR ...)
  ENDIF
  IF FAX#3 is not empty
    IF FAX#3 is greater than 9999999 (area code is included)
      MOVE a '1' before the FAX Number
    ENDIF
    IF '9' is required in dialing
      MOVE a '9' before the FAX Number
    ENDIF
    MOVE 'Accounts Receivable' to ENTRY
    MOVE updated FAX#3 to FAXNBR in FAX Master List Database
    CALL FMLECLP(DEST IDEN ENTRY FAXNBR ...)
  ENDIF
  READ next Customer Master record
ENDDO
CLOSE all open files
```

If all the telephones in your organization required a prefix or a suffix, you could previously code those values.

Note: The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product expects *DEST*, *IDEN*, *ENTRY*, and *FAXNBR* fields to be left-adjusted in their respective databases. If you do not left-adjust these fields, fax support might not find the requested records when it processes a command.

Sample Program to Call CRTFAXMLE

The program in the previous example calls the following sample CL program to run the CRTFAXMLE command. The calling program passes the necessary parameters to this program.

```
/*
 *
 * These parameters are passed from the calling program.
 * The only required parameters are &DEST and &FAXNBR
 *
 */
*****/
PGM          PARM(&DEST &ID &ENTRY &FAXNBR &CONTACT +
              &PHONE)
DCL          VAR(&DEST)      TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
DCL          VAR(&ID)        TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
DCL          VAR(&ENTRY)     TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
DCL          VAR(&FAXNBR)    TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
DCL          VAR(&CONTACT)   TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
DCL          VAR(&PHONE)     TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
/*
 *
 * The company name is used for the destination entry and the 1st
 * TO line of the cover page.
 *
 */
*****/
CRTFAXMLE    DEST(&DEST) ID(&ID) ENTRY(&ENTRY) +
            CONT(&CONTACT) PHONE(&PHONE) +
            FAXNBR(&FAXNBR) TOLIN1(&DEST) +
            TOLIN2(&CONTACT) OWNER(*CURRENT) +
            AUT(*USE)
MONMSG      CPF0000
MONMSG      FRQ0000
/*
 *
 * End this program
 *
 */
*****/
ENDPGM:     RETURN
```

Integrating the Enhanced Services Features

This section describes in detail three different methods of integrating the Enhanced Services features with your business application.

Method 1

Use this method for interactive applications. The example for this method changes an order-entry application so that it starts Enhanced Services. This example outlines all of the required steps for integrating the Enhanced Services features with the sample order-entry application.

Method 2

Use this method for interactive applications. The example for this method shows how to fax a print screen of the Modify Order display. This display appears when a user calls the print-screen function.

Method 3

Use this method for batch applications. The example for this method shows how to fax spooled output that a batch application created.

Integration Method 1 for Interactive Applications

This section uses method 1 to explain the steps for integrating Enhanced Services. The example uses an interactive order-entry application. Before starting the integration, make sure that you can do the following:

- Identify the interactive program that is targeted for Enhanced Services integration.
- Identify any display files that need to be changed.
- Identify the program that creates a spooled file for faxing at a later time.
- Identify any printer files that are used in the print program.
- Identify any parameters that need to be passed to the control language (CL) program that submits the Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command.
- To preselect a destination, determine if you want to select the destination by name, identifier, name and identifier, or distribution list.
- Determine how to select the entry for a destination if the selection is done by destination name, identifier, or both.
- Determine which entry to select if a specific entry needs to be selected from a destination.

For this example of the order-entry application, the following is true:

- The interactive program used in the integration is ORDENTI in the ORDENTLIB library.
- The display file that needs to be changed is ORDENTDSP in the ORDENTLIB library.
- The print program that creates the fax spooled file is PRNORD.
- The printer file that is used in the PRNORD program is PRNORD.
- The program passes the CUSTNO and ORDNO variables to the SBFAX command.
- The identifier of the destination, CUSTNO, selects the fax destination.
- The entry that is selected for the destination is the default [ENTSELMTH(*DEFAULT)].
- Since the default entry is being selected, no specific entry needs to be selected.

Facsimile Creation Flow for Method 1

The following example shows the programming flow for faxing information. This example shows method 1.

```
'Start HLL program order entry
.
.
Display order entry screen

If fax requested
  set up parameters
.
.
'Call CL program to submit SBFAX command
  CALL SBMORDI
.
.
continue processing
```

Changing the Order Entry Display File

The following example shows an Order Entry and Inquiry display with a fax option.

```
Order Entry and Inquiry

Type an option from the list below or use F12=Previous to end this function.
1=Modify Order 2=Print Order 3=Fax Order 4=Remove Order
5=Submit FAX Order

Opt Customer Name           Customer  Order
                             Number      Number
- COMPANY A                 100      000001
- COMPANY B                 200      000002
- COMPANY C                 300      000003
- COMPANY D                 400      000004
- COMPANY E                 500      000005
- COMPANY F                 600      000006
- COMPANY G                 700      000007
- COMPANY H                 800      000008
- COMPANY I                 900      000009
- COMPANY J                1000     000010

F5=Refresh F6=Create New Order F7=Fax Print Screen F8=Check Fax Status
F12=Previous F13=Messages F14=Work with Received Fax
```

This example shows the addition of a new option, which allows the user to fax an order (option 3). In your application, you may want to use a function key instead of a menu option for faxing an order, as done here. After you make changes to your display file, recompile the display file. Use the test option of the screen design aid (SDA) to verify your changes.

Changing the HLL Interactive Program ORDENTI

After you verify your changes to the display file, make the appropriate changes to your high-level language (HLL) program. In this example, you need to add source code to your program to check for the new option (option 3) or a function key to run the SBMFAX command.

The section of code that is processed when a user requests an order to be faxed must call a CL program. In the called CL program, you must define the passed parameters and submit the SBMFAX command. The following sections show how to do this.

In RPG, use a CALL statement that is similar to the following:

```
MOVELCUSTNO IDEN 30
CALL 'SBMORDI'
PARM IDEN
PARM ORDNO
```

In COBOL, use a CALL statement that is similar to the following:

```
MOVE CUSTNO TO IDEN.
CALL 'SBMORDI' USING IDEN, ORDNO.
```

In both examples, the CUSTNO parameter is the customer number for which the user has selected to fax an order. ORDNO is the specific order number that needs to be faxed. The program must move the customer number field, *CUSTNO*, to a 30-byte character field.

In this example, we named the field *IDEN* for the destination identifier. The *IDEN* field must be 30 bytes long because it is used as a substitution variable in the FAXORD program.

Make the necessary changes to your HLL program. Then, compile the program and verify that you have no compilation errors.

Creating the CL Program SBMORDI

Create the CL program SBMORDI. This program submits the SBMFAX command. This program must accept parameters that specify the identifier (&IDEN) to preselect and the order number (&ORDNO) to create a fax. Use the following example as a model to create your own CL program that starts the SBMFAX command.

```
BEGIN:      PGM          PARM(&IDEN &ORDNO)
            DCL          VAR(&IDEN) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
            DCL          VAR(&ORDNO) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(6)
            SBMFAX       TYPE(*INT) +
                    OPTION(*GENFAXSPL) +
                    DSTSELMTH(*IDEN) +
                    ID(&IDEN) +
                    ENTSELMTH(*DEFAULT) +
                    COMMAND(CALL PGM(ORDENTLIB/PRNORD) PARM(&ORDNO)) +
                    PGMSPFL(PRNORD)

END:        ENDPGM
```

After you change CL program, as shown in the previous example, compile the program and remove any compilation errors that occurred.

For a further description of the SBMFAX command, see “SBMFAX (Submit Fax) Command” on page 189.

Integration Method 2 for Interactive Applications

This section uses method 2 to explain the steps for integrating Enhanced Services. The example that is used here for an interactive application shows how to fax print-screen output. Before you start the integration, make sure that you can do the following:

- Identify the interactive program that is targeted for Enhanced Services integration.
- Identify any display files that need to be changed.
- Identify the name of the print-screen spooled file.
- Identify any parameters that need to be passed to the CL program that submits the SBMFAX command.
- If you want to preselect a destination, determine if it is by destination name, identifier, or both; or by distribution list.
- Determine how to select the entry for a destination, if the selection value is destination name, identifier, or both.
- If a specific entry needs to be selected from a destination, determine which entry to select.

For this example of the order-entry application, the following is true:

- The interactive program to be used in the integration is ORDENTI in the ORDENTLIB library.
- The print-screen spooled file is QSYSPRT.

- The printer file that is used in the PRNORD program is PRNORD.
- The CUSTNO and ORDNO variables must be passed to the SBMFAX command.
- The fax destination is selected by the identifier of the destination, CUSTNO.
- The entry that is selected for the destination is the default [ENTSELMTH(*DEFAULT)].
- Since the default entry is being selected, no specific entry needs to be selected.

Fax Creation Flow for Method 2

The following example shows the programming flow for faxing information. This example uses method 2.

```
'Start HLL program order entry
.
.
Display order entry screen

If F7 pressed (fax of print screen)
    set up parameters
.
.
'Call CL program to submit SBMFAX command
CALL SBMORDP
.
.
continue processing
```

Changing the Order Entry Display File

The following example shows an Order Entry and Inquiry display with a fax print-screen option.

Order Entry and Inquiry

Type an option from the list below or use F12=Previous to end this function.
 1=Modify Order 2=Print Order 3=Fax Order 4=Remove Order
 5=Submit FAX Order

Opt	Customer Name	Customer Number	Order Number
-	COMPANY A	100	000001
-	COMPANY B	200	000002
-	COMPANY C	300	000003
-	COMPANY D	400	000004
-	COMPANY E	500	000005
-	COMPANY F	600	000006
-	COMPANY G	700	000007
-	COMPANY H	800	000008
-	COMPANY I	900	000009
-	COMPANY J	1000	000010

F5=Refresh F6=Create New Order F7=Fax Print Screen F8=Check Fax Status
 F12=Previous F13=Messages F14=Work with Received Facsimiles

In this example, we added a new function key (F7) to use to submit the SBMFAX command. After you make changes to your display file, recompile the display file and use the test option of SDA to verify your changes.

Changing the HLL Interactive Program ORDENTI

After you verify the changes you have made to the display file, make the appropriate changes to your HLL program. In this example, you need to add source code to your program to check for the new function key (F7).

In the section of code that is processed when a user requests an order to be faxed, you must call a CL program. In the called CL program, you must define the passed parameters and submit the SBMFAX command. The following sections present these steps in further detail.

In RPG, use a CALL statement that is similar to the following statement:

```
MOVELCUSTNO IDEN      30
CALL 'SBMORDP'
PARM          IDEN
PARM          ORDNO
```

In COBOL, use a CALL statement that is similar to the following statement:

```
MOVE CUSTNO TO IDEN.
CALL 'SBMORDP' USING IDEN, ORDNO.
```

In both examples, the CUSTNO parameter is the customer number the user selected to fax an order. ORDNO is the specific order number that needs to be faxed. Your program must move the customer number field, *CUSTNO*, to a 30-byte character field. In this example, we named the field *IDEN* for the destination identifier. The *IDEN* field must be 30 bytes long because the FAXORD program uses it as a substitution variable. After you make the changes to your HLL program, compile it and verify that you have no compilation errors.

Creating the CL Program SBMORDP

Create the CL program SBMORDP that submits the SBMFAX command. This program must accept parameters that specify the identifier (&IDEN) to preselect and the order number (&ORDNO) to create a fax. Use the example that is shown below as a model to create your own CL program that starts the SBMFAX command.

```
BEGIN:      PGM          PARM(&IDEN &ORDNO)
            DCL          VAR(&IDEN) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
            DCL          VAR(&ORDNO) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(6)
            SBMFAX       TYPE(*INT) +
                    OPTION(*PRTSCNFAX) +
                    DSTSELMTH(*IDEN) +
                    ID(&IDEN) +
                    ENTSELMTH(*DEFAULT) +
                    FILE(QSYSPRT) +
                    JOB(*) +
                    SPLNBR(*LAST)
END:        ENDPGM
```

After you change your CL program, as shown in the previous example, compile your program and remove any compilation errors that occur.

For further description of the SBMFAX command, see “SBMFAX (Submit Fax) Command” on page 189.

Integration Method 3 for Batch Applications

This section explains the steps for integrating Enhanced Services. This example shows a batch order-entry application, and uses method 3. In this example, the user does not see the Submit Fax display; parameter values on the SBMFAX command control the faxing.

Before starting the integration, make sure that you can do the following:

- Identify the batch program that is targeted for Enhanced Services integration.
- Identify the program that creates a spooled file for faxing at a later time.
- Identify any printer files that are used in this print program.
- Identify any parameters that might need to be passed to the CL program that submits the SBMFAX command.
- If you want to preselect a destination, determine if selection should be by destination name, identifier, or both; or by distribution list.
- If you want to select by destination name, identifier, or both, determine how to select the entry for a destination.
- If a specific entry needs to be selected from a destination, determine which entry to selected.

For this example of the order-entry application, the following is true:

- The batch program to be used in the integration is SBMORDB in the ORDENTLIB library.
- The print program that creates the fax spooled file is PRNORD.
- The printer file that is used in the PRNORD program is PRNORD.
- The CUSTNO and ORDNO variables need to be passed to the SBMFAX command.
- The identifier of the destination, CUSTNO, selects the fax destination.
- The entry that is selected for the destination is the default [ENTSELMTH(*DEFAULT)].
- Since the default entry is being selected, no specific entry needs to be selected.

Facsimile Creation Flow for Method 3

The following example shows the programming flow for faxing information. This example uses method 3.

```
'Start HLL program order entry
.
.
'Call CL program to submit SBMFAX command
CALL SBMORDB
.
.
continue processing
```

Creating the CL Program SBMORDB

Create the CL program SBMORDB that can be called to submit the SBMFAX command. This program must accept parameters that specify the identifier (&IDEN) to preselect and the order number (&ORDNO) to create a fax. Use the following example as a model for creating your own CL program to start the SBMFAX command.

```

BEGIN:      PGM          PARM(&IDEN &ORDNO)
           DCL          VAR(&IDEN) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30)
           DCL          VAR(&ORDNO) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(6)
           SBMFAX       TYPE(*BCH) +
                   OPTION(*GENFAXSPL) +
                   DSTSELMTH(*IDEN) +
                   ID(&IDEN) +
                   ENTSELMTH(*DEFAULT) +
                   COMMAND(CALL PGM(ORDENTLIB/PRNORD) PARM(&ORDNO)) +
                   PGMSPFL(PRNORD)
END:        ENDPGM

```

After you change your CL program, as shown in the previous example, compile the program and remove any compilation errors that occur.

For more information on the SBMFAX command, see “SBMFAX (Submit Fax) Command” on page 189.

Receive Fax Data Area

Enhanced Services allow a user program to handle incoming faxes. You can use the following commands to start Enhanced Services:

- Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV)
- Work with Received Fax (WRKRCVFAX)
- Work with TSI Routing (WRKTSIRTG)

When the user receive program runs, it needs to know where to find the received fax. This information is available in a data area that the receive program accesses while it is running.

Fax support creates a receive fax (RCVFAX) data area in the QTEMP library of the batch job that uses the user receive program. Table 4 describes the layout of the data area.

Table 4. RCVFAX Data Area

Positions	Description
01 - 10	Name of library where the receive fax database resides
11 - 20	Name of the receive fax database
21 - 30	Name of member in which the fax is stored
31 - 35	Number of pages received
36 - 55	TSI code of sending fax device
56 - 56	Success code of the received fax: S (Successful) or U (Unsuccessful)
57 - 64	Fax controller used to receive the fax
65 - 68	Fax card or port
69 - 78	Routing code received
79 - 2000	Not used

The following is a simple CL program that notifies a user when a received fax fails and updates a database file through RPG with that information.

```

/* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * */
/* PURPOSE: THIS PROGRAM WILL DUPLICATE THE RECEIVE FAX DATA AREA */
/* AND SEND A MESSAGE TO DSMITH WHEN THE FAX FAILS. */
/* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * */
PGM
DCL          VAR(&FDRLIB) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10) /* Fax +
           Database Library */

```

```

DCL      VAR(&FDRDBF) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10) /* Fax +
         Database File */
DCL      VAR(&FDRMBR) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10) /* Fax +
         Database File Member */
DCL      VAR(&FDRPAG) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(5) /* Number of +
         Pages Received */
DCL      VAR(&TSICDE) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(20) /* TSI code +
         of sending fax device */
DCL      VAR(&RCVCDE) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(1) /* Received +
         Code - S = Successful or U = Unsuccessful */
DCL      VAR(&MSGFST) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(17) VALUE('Fax +
         received from')
DCL      VAR(&MSGSND) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(30) VALUE('did +
         NOT complete successfully')
DCL      VAR(&WDTMSG) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(80)

ADDLIBLE LIB(USER LIBRARY)/*The name of the user library +
         that contains the program.*/

ADDLIBLE LIB(QFAX)
MONMSG   MSGID(CPF2103)
RTVDTAARA DTAARA(RCVFAX (1 10)) RTNVAR(&FDRLIB)
RTVDTAARA DTAARA(RCVFAX (11 10)) RTNVAR(&FDRDBF)
RTVDTAARA DTAARA(RCVFAX (21 10)) RTNVAR(&FDRMBR)
RTVDTAARA DTAARA(RCVFAX (31 5)) RTNVAR(&FDRPAG)
RTVDTAARA DTAARA(RCVFAX (36 20)) RTNVAR(&TSICDE)
RTVDTAARA DTAARA(RCVFAX (56 1)) RTNVAR(&RCVCDE)

IF        COND(&RCVCDE *EQ 'U') THEN(DO)
CHGVAR    VAR(&WDTMSG) VALUE(&MSGFST || ' ' || &TSICDE +
         *BCAT &MSGSND)
SNDMSG    MSG(&WDTMSG) TOUSR(DSMITH)
          ENDDO

CALL      PGM(T001RPG) PARM(&FDRLIB &FDRDBF          +
         &FDRMBR &FDRPAG &TSICDE &RCVCDE)

ENDIT:    ENDPGM

```

Integrating the CRTFAXNOTE Command

The Create Fax Note (CRTFAXNOTE) command can be easily integrated into an application. The CRTFAXNOTE command does *not* require you to have the OfficeVision product. CRTFAXNOTE is most commonly used for quick notes or flashes to a customer. The following shows several methods you might use to start the command.

Method 1

A function key on a menu that runs the CRTFAXNOTE command.

Method 2

A CL program that retrieves data from either a data area, data queue, or user space and runs the command with previously existing parameters.

Method 3

A high level language (HLL) program that calls the command and passes it variables.

The following example shows a CL integration program. This example uses method 2.

```

          PGM
/*===== */
/*          VARIABLES USED IN THE CRTFAXNOTE COMMAND          */

```


- If the fax profile for this user specifies an image viewing program in the *View Image Program* field, that program is started. After the fax has been displayed, the image viewing program ends.

This image viewing program creates a Disk Operating System (DOS) or OS/2 command string that runs a PC-based image software application. This application can view *RFTDCA, *MODCA, *RFTDCAFAX, or *MODCAFAX documents that are stored in a folder. This program must accept two parameters:

- Document name (maximum of 12 characters long)
- Folder name (maximum of 63 characters long)

After accepting the parameters, the program creates the appropriate DOS or OS/2 command string, which includes the following:

- Absolute path name for the view image product
- PC drive letter that is assigned to the folder that contains the document
- Any parameters that are required for the view image product

The program first creates the command string. Then, the program calls the Start PC Command (STRPCCMD) command to run the command and monitor for escape messages.

The following is a sample program to call a PC program to view received faxes:

```

/*****
/* DISCLAIMER: */
/* This code is offered "AS IS" and all warranties, either express */
/* or implied including, but not limited to the IMPLIED WARRANTIES */
/* OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE are */
/* expressly disclaimed. IBM will not be liable for any damages */
/* including, but not limited to consequential, incidental, */
/* special, or indirect damages from this code. */
/*****

/* DOCUMENT and FOLDER are passed to program by Enhanced Services */
PGM          PARM(&DOCUMENT &FOLDER)
DCL          VAR(&DOCUMENT) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(12)
DCL          VAR(&FOLDER) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(63)
DCL          VAR(&PCCMD) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(256)
DCL          VAR(&CHRTYP) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(20)
DCL          VAR(&MSGDTA) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(256)
DCL          VAR(&MSGID) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(7)
DCL          VAR(&MSGF) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)
DCL          VAR(&MSGFL) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)

/* Declare document description database file */
/* DOCDESC should be created prior to creating this CL program. */
/* RTVDOC should be called as follows to create the */
/* DOCDESC file. */
/* */
/* RTVDOC FROMDOC(ANYFILE) FROMFLR(USERFLR) + */
/* OUTFILE(USERLIB/DOCDESC) OUTDTATYP(*DOCD) */

DCLF FILE(DOCDESC)

/* If source document is RFTDCA or RFTDCAFAX convert to MODCAFAX. */
/* Note: Converting to MODCA would also work for AFP Workbench */
/* Note: MODCAFAX and RFTDCAFAX are only valid for V3 and beyond */
/* of OS/400. */

/* Retrieve document description */
QSYS/OVRDBF FILE(DOCDESC) TOFILE(QTEMP/DOCDESC) +
LVLCHK(*NO)

```

```

        QSYS/RTVDOC FROMDOC(&DOCUMENT) FROMFLR(&FOLDER) +
            OUTFILE(QTEMP/DOCDESC) OUTMBR(*FIRST +
                *REPLACE) OUTDTATYP(*DOCD)
        MONMSG      MSGID(CPF0000)
        MONMSG      MSGID(OFC0000)

/* Read in the record to get the document type */
        RCVF

/* Analyze document type value and set document type string */
        CHGVAR      VAR(&CHRTYP) VALUE(' ')
        IF          COND(&RTVDTP = 11) THEN(CHGVAR VAR(&CHRTYP) +
            VALUE('*RFTDCA'))
        IF          COND(&RTVDTP = 16) THEN(CHGVAR VAR(&CHRTYP) +
            VALUE('*MODCA'))
        IF          COND(&RTVDTP = 33) THEN(CHGVAR VAR(&CHRTYP) +
            VALUE('*RFTDCAFAX'))
        IF          COND(&RTVDTP = 34) THEN(CHGVAR VAR(&CHRTYP) +
            VALUE('*MODCAFAX'))

/* If RFT document, convert to MODCA. */
        IF          COND((&CHRTYP = '*RFTDCA') *OR (&CHRTYP = +
            '*RFTDCAFAX')) THEN(DO)

/* Convert document type to MODCAFAX if RFTDCA or RFTDCAFAX. */
        CVTFAXDOC  DOC(&DOCUMENT) FLR(&FOLDER) TOFLR(FXWRKFLR) +
            FRMTYP(&CHRTYP) TOTYP(*MODCAFAX) +
            REPLACE(*YES)
        MONMSG      MSGID(CPF0000)
        MONMSG      MSGID(FAX0000)

/* Temporary copy of document placed in FXWRKFLR if CVTFAXDOC */
/* is called. */
        CHGVAR      VAR(&FOLDER) VALUE('FXWRKFLR')

        ENDDO

/* Call AFP Workbench. */
        CHGVAR      VAR(&PCCMD) VALUE('C:\fld\fldwinvw.exe I:\' +
            *TCAT &FOLDER *TCAT '\ ' *TCAT &DOCUMENT +
            *TCAT ' /L')

        STRPCCMD    PCCMD(&PCCMD) PAUSE(*NO)
        MONMSG      IWS4000
        MONMSG      CPF0000

/* Delete document library object if in FXWRKFLR */
        IF          COND(&FOLDER = 'FXWRKFLR') THEN(DO)
            DLTDLO    DLO(&DOCUMENT) FLR(&FOLDER)
            MONMSG    MSGID(CPF0000)
            MONMSG    MSGID(OFC0000)
        ENDDO

ENDPGM:
        ENDPGM

```

Use the Create Control Language Program (CRTCLPGM) command to compile and create the view image program. Verify the results of the compile and correct any errors that occurred.

Notes:

1. This example uses AFP Workbench for Windows to view a fax image. You can use AFP Workbench to view *MODCA or *MODCAFAX documents. To view *RFTDCAFAX, you must use the CVTFAXDOC command to produce a *MODCA or *MODCAFAX document, then call STRPCCMD. You should use an emulation support program that supports starting applications through the

Windows** Organizer function. Emulation programs that support this are the RUMBA/400 and the Personal Communications 5250 (PC5250) emulation programs.

2. In this example, the program sets the PCCMD variable as follows:

```
C:\fld\fldwinvw.exe I:\&FOLDER\&DOCUMENT; /L
```

If you are using Version 4 Release 2 Modification 0 of the Client Access product, you may need to insert an additional directory for the new file system support. The new string would be:

```
C:\fld\fldwinvw.exe I:\QDLS\&FOLDER\&DOCUMENT; /L
```

Under the OS/2 operating system, the PCCMD variable would be set as follows:

```
C:\fod\fodwinvw.exe I:\&FOLDER\&DOCUMENT; /L
```

3. You must define the DOCDESC file prior to creating this CL program. Refer to the comments in the sample program for more information.

Note: If you are using the 32-bit version of the AFP Workbench, you need to use ftdwinvw instead of fldwinvw.

Setting Up the Workstation Environment

To use the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for viewing received faxes, your PC workstation environment must be configured to allow PC commands to be entered from an AS/400 system. Do the following Client Access functions to set up the workstation environment:

- Specify a folder assignment to a drive letter. This drive letter (and optional folder name) must be the same as specified in the view image program.
- Specify the PC Organizer (PCO) command to run when starting the Client Access.
- Use the Start Client Access (STARTPCS) command to begin a session on your AS/400 system.

Notes:

1. Verify that the user who entered the Start Client Access (STARTPCS) command has a minimum of the following authority:
 - *USE authority to the folder
 - *USE authority to any document the user needs to view
2. The previous instructions apply to the DOS Extended and IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2) environments. If you are using Windows 3.1, start an AS/400 session and assign a folder. To do this, select the appropriate icons in your Client Access for Windows group.

Chapter 5. Enhanced Services Security

This chapter describes how the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product provides security features within Enhanced Services.

Security Checking Scheme

The methods to determine authority for a fax master list entry, fax distribution list, outbound fax, or inbound fax are the same used by the AS/400 system when it performs its security checks:

- Is the current user the owner?
 - Is the current user a fax administrator?
 - Does the current user have specific authority?
 - If no authority is found during the previous checks, is public authority sufficient for the requested function?
-

Security

These features of Enhanced Services provide security:

- Commands
 - Fax administration
 - Fax master list
 - Fax distribution list
 - Outbound faxes
 - Inbound faxes
-

Commands

The Enhanced Services commands require that the user running the command has a fax profile. (Exceptions are the Work with Fax Profile (WRKFAXPRF), Create Fax Profile (CRTFAXPRF), and Edit Fax Profile (EDTFAXPRF) commands.) If a fax profile does not exist, the command processing stops.

Fax Administration

You can identify a user as fax administrator by setting the Administrator field within a fax profile. To do this, you must sign on the AS/400 system as the security officer (QSECOFR) or already be a fax administrator. A fax administrator has the equivalent of *ALLOBJ authority to fax profiles, master lists, distribution lists, and faxes. For example, a fax administrator can perform any of the following tasks:

- Create additional fax profiles
- Edit, change, or view, or remove another user's fax profile
- Work with received faxes that are not owned by a specific user
- Configure Enhanced Services
- Start or end Enhanced Services
- Change, edit, or delete another user's distribution list or master list entries

Fax Master List

The fax master list entries all have an associated owner, public authority, and user-specific authority. The following rules apply when running any Enhanced Services command that uses a fax master list entry:

- A fax profile must exist for all users being granted authority to an entry.
- The owner of the entry always has *ALL authority, and this value cannot be changed unless the ownership is changed to another user.
- A fax administrator always has *ALL authority.
- If a new owner has specific authority, the specific authority for that user is removed before the ownership is changed.

Authority Rules For All Fax Master List Functions

The authority that is required for a user to perform specific functions on the fax master list follows. This list assumes that the user is not a fax administrator.

Change Fax Master List Owner Authority

The following table shows the authority required to change the owner of a fax master list entry. The Change Master List Entry Owner (CHGMLEOWN) command allows you to change the owner.

Function	Authority
Change owner	*ALL authority to the entry

Create Fax Master List Entry Authority

The following table shows the authority required to create a new entry in the fax master list. The Create Fax Master List Entry Authority (CRTFAXMLE) command allows you to create a new entry.

Function	Authority
Create a *DEFAULT entry	No authority is required
Create a nondefault entry	*CHANGE authority to the *DEFAULT entry

Grant Fax Master List Entry Authority

The following table shows the authority required to grant one or more users authority to a specific fax master list entry. The Grant Master List Entry Authority (GRTMLEAUT) command allows you to grant authority to a master list entry.

Function	Authority
Grant authority	*ALL authority to the entry

Work with Fax Master List Authority

The following table shows the authority required to work with the fax master list. The Work with Fax Master List (WRKFAXMST) command allows you to work with the master list.

Function	Authority
Create a *DEFAULT entry	No authority is required
Create a nondefault entry	*CHANGE authority to the *DEFAULT entry

Function	Authority
Change an entry	*CHANGE authority to the entry
View an entry	*USE authority to the entry
Remove a *DEFAULT entry	*ALL authority to the entry
Remove a nondefault entry	*ALL authority to the *DEFAULT and all nondefault entries
Edit authority to an entry	*ALL authority to the entry

Submitting Faxes Authority

The following table shows the authority required to submit a fax. The Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command allows you to submit a fax.

Function	Authority
Selecting an entry	*USE authority to the entry

Work with Received Faxes Authority

The fax master list entries that are assigned a specific transmitting subscriber identification (TSI) or routing code determine authority for received faxes, as follows:

- When the TSI for a received fax matches the value from a fax master list entry, the authority associated with that entry determines what can be done with the received fax.
- When the routing code for the received fax matches the value from a fax profile, the authority associated with that profile determines what can be done with the received fax.
- If no match is made, only a fax administrator can work with the fax.

TSI Routing Authority: For routing type *TSI, the following rules of authority apply to the Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX) command.

Function	Authority
File a fax	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Remove a fax	*ALL authority to the entry
Work with log entries	*USE authority to the entry
Print a fax	*CHANGE authority the entry
Send notification	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Run a receive program	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Submit a Fax	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Send a document	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Update a destination	*CHANGE authority to the entry
View the received fax	*USE authority to the entry

Tone Routing Authority: For routing type *TONE, the following rules of authority apply to the Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX) command.

Function	Authority
File a fax	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Remove a fax	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Work with log entries	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator

Function	Authority
Print a fax	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Send notification	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Run a receive program	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Submit a Fax	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Send a document	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
View the received fax	Profile assigned to the routing code or a fax administrator
Update a fax profile	Owner of the fax profile, fax administrator, or *CHANGE authority to the fax profile

Work with TSI Routing Authority

Authority for TSI routing entries comes from the fax master list entries, since the routing entries are assigned to a specific entry. These rules apply to the Work with TSI Routing (WRKTSIRTG) command.

Function	Authority
Work with entries	*USE authority to the entry
Edit TSI code	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Create a TSI routing entry	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Change a TSI routing entry	*CHANGE authority to the entry
Remove a TSI routing entry	*ALL authority the entry

Fax Distribution List

All fax distribution lists have an associated owner, public authority, and user-specific authority. The entries within a fax distribution list obtain their authority from their associated fax master list entry. The following rules apply when running any Enhanced Services command that uses a fax distribution list:

- A fax profile must exist for all users being granted authority to the distribution list.
- The owner of the distribution list always has *ALL authority, and this value cannot be changed unless the ownership is changed to another user.
- A fax administrator always has *ALL authority.
- If a new owner has specific authority, the specific authority for that user is removed before the ownership is changed.

Authority Rules For All Fax Distribution List Commands

The authority rules that are required to perform specific functions on a Fax Distribution List follow.

Add Fax Distribution List Entry

The following table shows the authority required to add an entry to a fax distribution list. The Add Fax Distribution List Entry (ADDFAXDLE) command allows you to add an entry.

Function	Authority
Add a master list entry to a distribution list	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entry

Change Fax Distribution List Owner

The following table shows the authority required to change the owner of a fax distribution list. The Change Fax Distribution List Owner (CHGDSTOWN) command allows you to change the owner.

Function	Authority
Change owner	*ALL authority to the distribution list

Create Fax Distribution List

The following table shows the authority required to create a fax distribution list. The Create Fax Distribution List (CRTFAXDST) command allows you to create a distribution list.

Function	Authority
Create a distribution list	No authority is required

Edit Fax Distribution List

The following table shows the authority required to change the name or description of a fax distribution list. The Edit Fax Distribution List (EDTFAXDST) command allows you to change the name or description.

Function	Authority
Change a distribution list	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list

Grant Fax Distribution List Authority

The following table shows the authority required to grant one or more users authority to a fax distribution list. The Grant Fax Distribution List Authority (GRTDSTAUT) command allows you to grant authority to a distribution list.

Function	Authority
Grant authority	*ALL authority to the distribution list

Remove Fax Distribution List Entry Authority

The following table shows the authority required to remove an entry from a fax distribution list. The Remove Fax Distribution List Entry (RMVFAXDLE) command allows you to remove an entry.

Function	Authority
Remove an entry in a distribution list	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entry

Remove Fax Distribution List Authority

The following table shows the authority required to remove a fax distribution list. The Remove Fax Distribution List (RMVFAXDST) command allows you to remove a distribution list.

Function	Authority
Remove a distribution list	*ALL authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entries

Submit Fax Authority

The following table shows the authority required to submit a fax to one or more destinations. The Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command allows you to submit a fax.

Function	Authority
Select a fax distribution list	*USE authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entries

Work with Fax Distribution List Authority

The following table shows the authority required to work with the entries of a fax distribution list. The Work with Fax Distribution (WRKFAXDST) command allows you to work with distribution list entries.

Function	Authority
Create a distribution list	No authority is required
Work with distribution list entries	*USE authority to the distribution list
Add a distribution list entry	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entry
Remove a distribution list entry	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entry
Remove a distribution list	*ALL authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the fax master list entries
Rename a distribution list	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list
Change distribution list description	*CHANGE authority to the distribution list
Edit distribution list	*ALL authority to the distribution list

Outbound Faxes

All outbound faxes have an associated owner, public authority, and user-specific authority. The user making the fax request always determines the owner value. This value cannot be changed. The following rules apply when running any Enhanced Services command that uses an outbound fax:

- A fax profile must exist for all users being granted authority to an outbound fax.
- The owner of the outbound fax always has *ALL authority.
- A fax administrator always has *ALL authority to an outbound fax.
- If a new owner has specific authority, the specific authority for that user is removed before the ownership is changed.

Authority Rules For All Outbound Fax Commands

The authority rules that are required to perform specific functions on an outbound fax follow.

Check Fax Status

The following table shows the authority required to check or reset the status of outbound faxes. The Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command allows you to check or reset the status.

Function	Authority
Remove an outbound fax and associated log entries	*ALL authority to the outbound fax
Work with status information	*USE authority to the outbound fax
Reset an outbound fax	*CHANGE authority to the outbound fax
Resend an outbound fax	*CHANGE authority to the outbound fax
View an outbound fax	*USE authority to the outbound fax

Chapter 6. Fax Transaction Log Record Format

This chapter describes the format of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 transaction log records that are written to the database file. The QAFFTLLOG transaction log database file resides in the QUSRSYS library. The total record length of the transaction log database file QAFFTLLOG is 2000 bytes.

Fax support names the members in the transaction log database file FTLOGnn, where nn is a sequence number from 01 to 99. Fax support writes the transaction log records to a member until that member is full. When the member is full, fax support adds a new member with the next sequence number to the database file, then writes the transaction log records to the new member.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product does not delete records from the members in the transaction log database file. It also does not remove members from the transaction log database file. You are responsible for managing the size of this file, deleting records, and removing members from the file.

If your application deletes records from the transaction log database file, consider using the Change Physical File (CHGPF) command and specifying REUSEDLT(*YES). Future Facsimile Support for AS/400 insert requests can then reclaim the space that was once used by deleted entries. You should never add new members to this file or rename members that exist in this file. If you want to reset the sequence number to 01, remove all members from the file. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product then creates a new member with the 01 sequence number.

Table 5 has the following columns:

Field Name

The field name in the data description specifications for the transaction log database file.

Field Length

The length of the field. All fields are character fields; the field length is the number of characters in the field.

Field Description

A description of the contents of the field.

Table 5. Transaction Log Record Format

Field Name	Field Length	Field Description
QFDATE	6	Date of the transaction log entry. The format of this field is <i>yymmdd</i> , where <i>yy</i> is year (00 through 99), <i>mm</i> is month (01 through 12), and <i>dd</i> is day (01 through 31).
QFTIME	6	Time of the transaction log entry. The format of this field is <i>hhmmss</i> , where <i>hh</i> is hour (00 through 23), <i>mm</i> is minute (00 through 59), and <i>ss</i> is second (00 through 59).

Table 5. Transaction Log Record Format (continued)

Field Name	Field Length	Field Description
QFTYPE	2	Type of the transaction log entry. The log entry types are: 00 SNDFAX command transaction log entry 01 Send fax call transaction log entry 02 Receive fax transaction log entry 03 File fax transaction log entry 04 File fax and delete the database file member transaction log entry 05 Print fax transaction log entry 06 Print fax and delete the database file member transaction log entry
QFDEST	75	Destination of the operation for the transaction log entry. The data and the actual length of the data in this field depend on the type of the transaction being logged. The data and data length values for each transaction type are: 00 The total field is set to blanks. 01 The telephone number where the fax was sent. The telephone number can have a maximum length of 32 characters. The total field is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. This is the telephone number specified in the TO parameter on the SNDFAX command. 02 The qualified name of the database file where the fax is received. The qualified name is a 30-character string made up of a 10-character library name, a 10-character database file name, and a 10-character member name. The total field and each name in the field are left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. The library and database file names are specified by the FAXFILE parameter on the ADDFAXCRD command. The member name is created by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product at the time the fax is received. 03 & 04 The name of the document where the fax is filed. This name consists of a 12-character document name followed by a 63-character folder name. The total field and each name in the field are left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. These names are specified by the TODOC and TOFLR parameters on the FILFAX command. 05 & 06 The name of the printer where the fax is printed. The printer name can be a maximum of 10 characters in length. The name in the field is left-justified and is padded on the right with blanks. This is the printer name specified in the DEV parameter on the PRTFAX command.

Table 5. Transaction Log Record Format (continued)

Field Name	Field Length	Field Description
QFORIG	40	<p>Origin of the operation for the transaction log entry. The data and the actual length of the data in this field depends on the type of the transaction being logged. The data and data length for each transaction type are:</p> <p>00 & 01</p> <p>The qualified job name, spooled file name, and spooled file number of the spooled file that was sent. The field is a 40-character string made up of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10-character job name • 10-character user name • 6-character job number • 10-character spooled file name • 4-character spooled file number <p>Each name in the field is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. These names are specified by the JOB, FILE, and SPLNBR parameters on the SNDFAX command.</p> <p>02</p> <p>The transmitting subscriber identification (TSI) of the fax node that sent the fax. The TSI can be a maximum of 20 characters in length. The total field is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. If the sending fax node does not provide the TSI, this field is set to blanks.</p> <p>03 & 04</p> <p>The qualified name of the database file where the fax is filed. The qualified name is a 30-character string made up of a 10-character library name, a 10-character database file name, and a 10-character member name. The total field and each name in the field are left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. The library and database file names are specified by the FAXFILE parameter on the FILFAX command. The member name is specified by the FAXMBR parameter on the FILFAX command.</p> <p>05 & 06</p> <p>The qualified name of the database file where the fax is printed. The qualified name is a 30-character string made up of a 10-character library name, a 10-character database file name, and a 10-character member name. The total field and each name in the field are left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. The library and database file names are specified by the FAXFILE parameter on the PRTFAX command. The member name is specified by the FAXMBR parameter on the PRTFAX command.</p>
QFUSER	10	<p>Name of the user who performed the operation. Each name is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. The user name for each transaction type is:</p> <p>00 The name of the user who sent the fax</p> <p>01 The name of the user who sent the fax</p> <p>02 Set to blanks</p> <p>03 The name of the user who filed the fax</p> <p>04 The name of the user who filed and deleted the fax</p> <p>05 The name of the user who printed the fax</p> <p>06 The name of the user who printed and deleted the fax</p>

Table 5. Transaction Log Record Format (continued)

Field Name	Field Length	Field Description
QFTELT	6	Duration of the telephone connection. The format of this field is <i>hhmmss</i> , where <i>hh</i> is hours (00 through 23), <i>mm</i> is minutes (00 through 59), and <i>ss</i> is seconds (00 through 59). Note: This field is used only for transaction log entries of type 01 and 02. It is set to 000000 for all other transaction types.
QFPAGS	5	Number of pages sent or received. The number is right-justified and padded on the left with zeros. This field is also used for transaction type 00 when a data stream error (FAXC101) occurs when using the Integrated Fax Adapter. This can happen when you specify TRANSFORM(*YES) on the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command. Note: This field is used only for transaction log entries of type 01 and 02. It is set to 00000 for all other transaction types.
QFDESC	12	Name of the fax card or port that sent or received the fax. This name consists of the 8-character fax description name and the 4-character fax card or port name of the fax card or port that processed the fax. Each name in the field is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. These names are specified by the FAXD and FAXCRD parameters on the ADDFAXCRD command. Note: This field is used only for transaction log entries of type 01 and 02. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFSU	1	Completion status indicator for the fax operation. An S indicates the operation was successful, and a U indicates the operation was unsuccessful. Note: This field is used only for transaction log entries of type 00, 01, and 02. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFMSG	7	The message identifier that describes the successful or unsuccessful completion status for the operation. The message identifier contains the prefix characters FAX followed by a 4-character message identification number. Note: This field is used only for transaction log entries of type 00 and 01. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFDTMF	10	01 The telephone number prefix used to send the fax. 02 The Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) routing code received. The DTMF routing code consists of tones sent by a touchtone telephone. The IBM FaxConcentrator Adapter/A, some models of the GammaLink programmable fax adapter and the PCI Based Integrated Remote Access hardware support this value. Note: This field is used only for log entries of type 01 (send) and 02 (receive). It is set to blank for all other transaction types.
QFDCON	5	The type of telephone switch to which the card or port is directly connected. Note: This field is used only for log entry type 01. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFDWNL	1	The option of Host Print Transform or IBM Operating System/400 Version 3 (OS/400) spool support used to process the spooled file. This field is used only for log entry type 01. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFUD1	20	The first of two user-defined fields. This field is used only for log entry type 01. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFUD2	20	The second of two user-defined fields. This field is used only for log entry type 01. It is set to blanks for all other transaction types.
QFCDATE	8	Date of the transaction log entry, including the four-character year. The format of this field is <i>yyyymmdd</i> , where <i>yyyy</i> is year (1998 through 9999), <i>mm</i> is month (01 through 12), and <i>dd</i> is day (01 through 31).
QFRSVx	1766	Reserved, where x is an integer between 1 and 9.

Chapter 7. Send and Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format

This chapter describes the format of the data queue message the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates when sending or receiving a fax.

Send Fax Data Queue Message Format

When fax support sends a fax, it also sends a message to the data queue that you specified by the FAXSNDDQ parameter on the Send Fax (SNDFAX) command.

Table 6 has the following columns:

Field Length

The length of the field. All fields are character fields; the field length is the number of characters in the field.

Field Description

A description of the contents of the field.

Table 6. Send Fax Data Queue Message Format Table

Field Length	Field Description
40	The qualified job name, spooled file name, and spooled file number of the spooled file that was sent. The field is a 40-character string made up of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 10-character job name• 10-character user name• 6-character job number• 10-character spooled file name• 4-character spooled file number Each name in the field is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. These names are specified by the JOB, FILE, and SPLNBR parameters on the SNDFAX command.
32	The telephone number of the fax node where the fax is being sent. This number is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. This field is set to blanks for SNDFAX command completion messages.
2	The message type indicator. If the field is set to 00, the message is for a SNDFAX command. If the field is set to 01, the message is for an outbound fax call.
1	The completion status indicator for the SNDFAX command and each outbound fax call specified by a destination telephone number on the TO parameter of the SNDFAX command. An S indicates the SNDFAX command or call completed successfully, and a U indicates the SNDFAX command or call completed unsuccessfully. The completion status for a SNDFAX command is set to U if the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product could not process the spooled file or if one or more faxes for a SNDFAX command with multiple destinations were not successfully sent.
7	The Facsimile Support for AS/400 message identifier that describes the successful or unsuccessful completion status for the SNDFAX command and each outbound fax call specified by a destination telephone number on the TO parameter of the SNDFAX command. The message identifier contains the prefix characters FAX followed by a 4-character message identification number.
6	The date of the data queue entry.
6	The time of the data queue entry.
5	The number of pages sent.
6	The duration of the telephone connection.
8	The name of the fax controller (fax description) used to send the fax.

Table 6. Send Fax Data Queue Message Format Table (continued)

Field Length	Field Description
4	The name of the fax card or port used to send the fax.
256	The substitution text for the returned message identifier for FAXxxxx messages. This does not include the actual message text. For example, this data can be used as the substitution text for a FAXC102 message. The substitution text appears only if the message type indicator is set to 01.
10	The prefix for the telephone number.
5	The direct connection type used to send the fax.
1	The option used to process the fax file sent.
20	The first user-defined field.
20	The second user-defined field.
8	The date of the data queue entry, including the four-character year.
1563	Reserved.

Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format

When the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product receives a fax, it sends a message to the data queue you specified on the FAXRCVDQ parameter of the ADDFAXCRD command. If you did not specify a data queue, fax support sends the message to the default data queue, QUSRSYS/QFFRCVDQ.

Table 7 has the following columns:

Field Length

The length of the field. All fields are character fields; the field length is the number of characters in the field.

Field Description

A description of the contents of the field.

Table 7. Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format Table

Field Length	Field Description
30	The qualified name of the database file where the fax is received. The qualified name is a 30-character string made up of a 10-character library name, a 10-character database file name, and a 10-character member name. The total field and each name in the field are left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. The library and database file names are specified by the FAXFILE parameter on the ADDFAXCRD command. The member name is created by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product at the time the fax is received.
5	The number of pages contained in the fax. This number is right-justified and padded on the left with zeros.
20	The transmitting subscriber identification (TSI) of the fax node which sent the fax. The TSI can have a maximum length of 20 characters. The field is left-justified and padded on the right with blanks. If the sending fax node does not provide the TSI, this field is set to blanks.
1	The completion status indicator for the inbound fax call. An S indicates the call completed successfully, and a U indicates the call completed unsuccessfully. A completion status of U means that a partial fax was received. If a partial fax is received, only complete fax pages are saved in the database file member.
8	The fax controller used to receive the fax.
4	The name of the fax card or port used to receive the fax.
6	The date when the fax was received.

Table 7. Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format Table (continued)

Field Length	Field Description
6	The time when the fax was received.
10	The routing code received.
8	The date when the fax is received, including the four-character year.
1902	Reserved.

Chapter 8. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problem Analysis

Whenever you have a problem with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, first read any messages in the fax operator message queue, QFAXOPR, in the QUSRSYS library. Use the online cause information and the online recovery information to analyze the problem.

Messages

All messages that are associated with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product appear online in an AS/400 message queue or job logs for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 jobs. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product reports the completion status for inbound and outbound faxes to jobs running on the AS/400 system. It also reports errors detected in the fax controller. Messages from all unsuccessful Facsimile Support for AS/400 subsystem (QFAXSBS) jobs are sent to the QFAXOPR fax operator message queue. Jobs in the spool subsystem (QSPL) that are associated with a fax controller are also sent to QFAXOPR. See the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide* for a description of the jobs that are associated with each fax controller. When Facsimile Support for AS/400 jobs end, the system sends the job logs to the output queue to which logs for your jobs are directed.

AS/400 Messages

A prefix of FAX or FRQ before the message identification number and message text identify Facsimile Support for AS/400 messages. General Facsimile Support for AS/400 messages use the FAX prefix; Enhanced Services uses the FRQ prefix.

The following is an example of a Facsimile Support for AS/400 message:

```
FAXnnnn Fax file &1; in library &2; not found.
```

Note: In AS/400 messages, an ampersand (&) followed by a number (for example, &1) is a replacement value. When the message appears on the display, the actual value to which the message applies replaces the ampersand and number.

For example, when message FAX0001 displays, it might appear as follows:

```
FAX0001 Fax file TESTFAX in library TESTLIB not found.
```

The message file that contains the Facsimile Support for AS/400 messages is QFAXMSG in the QFAX library. Enhanced Services messages reside in the QFQMSGF message file in the QFAX library. You can use the Display Message Description (DSPMSGD) command to display or print message descriptions. Using the identifiers, you can specify the descriptions of specific messages or a range of messages in one message file. You can also specify the descriptions of all messages in one message file.

If you print the messages, you can choose to format the output, depending on command parameters you select. Following are examples of the DSPMSGD command:

```
DSPMSGD RANGE(FAX1200 FAX1300) MSGF(QFAX/QFAXMSG)
DSPMSGD RANGE(FRQ1000 FRQ2000) MSGF(QFAX/QFQMSGF)
```

The first command shows the message descriptions for message identifiers ranging between FAX1200 and FAX1300. The second command shows Enhanced Services messages ranging between FRQ1000 and FRQ2000. For a complete description of this command, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

External Fax Controller Messages

The IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2) system run-time errors that are detected in the fax controller may cause OS/2 system messages to appear. If the fax controller support is unable to report errors to the AS/400 host, fax error information appears. In these situations, fax controller support ends. When either an OS/2 message or a fax error message appears, record the error information before you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product again. If you are not able to resolve the problem by using the AS/400 online cause and recovery information, contact your service representative.

online help is available for many OS/2 system messages. To receive help information, type *HELP* and then the displayed error number at the OS/2 command prompt. The help information describes the cause of the message and any action that you should take to resolve related problems.

The OS/2 communications manager logs messages that correspond to communications errors that occur when the fax controller is active. The \CMLIB\FAXPC.MSG message log file contains these messages. Use the communications manager message function when a communications problem occurs. The communications manager also has status displays that provide useful communications status information.

Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problems

This section can help you solve a problem with the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. Check to see if any of the symptoms describe your problem, then take the suggested corrective action. Refer to the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide* for a complete explanation of a corrective action.

Note: This section assumes that the value you specified for both the QFAXOPR message queue and QSYSOPR message queue is *HOLD.

This section is organized by problem type. Look for problem analysis information under the type of problem you encounter. The problem types that are covered in this section are as follows:

- “Local Area Network Configuration Problems”.
- “Twinaxial Configuration Problems” on page 76.
- “Problems Sending Faxes” on page 78.
- “Fax Output Problems” on page 81.
- “Problems Printing Faxes” on page 82.
- “Miscellaneous Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problems” on page 82.

Local Area Network Configuration Problems

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, the last message in the QFAXOPR message queue is FAX1904. You also see the message CPA58E0

or CPA57EF in the QSYSOPR message queue. If you reply *Cancel* to message CPA58E0 or CPA57EF, message FAX0196 appears in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the Work with Configuration Status (WRKCFGSTS) command, you see that the controller status and device status for the fax controller is VRYPND.

Cause: One of the following occurred:

- The LAN adapter address of the fax controller does not match the adapter address that was entered on the CRTFAXD command.
- The fax controller is not powered on.

If the fax controller is powered on, use the DLTFAXD command to delete the fax description for this fax controller. Use the CRTFAXD command with the correct adapter address to create the fax description again. You must reply *Cancel* to message CPA58E0 or CPA57EF before you can end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. For more information about how to determine the burned-in (universally administered) address, see the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you run the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover the controller status and the device status for the fax controller is ACTIVE.

Cause: Check for the following errors:

- The AS/400 local network ID you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 system local network ID. Use the Display Network Attributes (DSPNETA) command to display the AS/400 local network ID. Verify that it matches the AS/400 system local network ID entered while setting up the fax controller. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.
- The AS/400 local adapter address that you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 system-local adapter address. Use the Display Line Description (DSPLIND) command to display the AS/400 local adapter address. Verify that it matches the AS/400 local adapter address that was entered when the fax controller was set up. Correct the configuration parameters in error. For more information about how to determine the burned-in (universally administered) address, see the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the error message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status is *ACTIVE* and that the status of all of the fax devices is RCYPND or RCYCNL for the fax controller.

Cause: One of the following occurred:

- The AS/400 default local location you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 system-default local location.
- The local network ID entered during the configuration does not match the system local network ID.

Use the DSPNETA command to display the AS/400 default local location. Verify that it matches the AS/400 default local location you entered when you set up the fax controller. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the error message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. Using the WRKCFGSTS command, the controller, fax send device, and fax receive device status are ACTIVE; but the fax control device status is *RCYPND*.

Cause: The fax control device name that you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 fax control device name. Use the WRKCFGSTS command to display the fax control device name. Verify that it matches the fax control device name that was entered when the fax controller was set up. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problem: The external fax controller shows the message ACS0503, indicating that a LAN error occurred.

Cause: The line speed of the token-ring adapter in the personal computer does not match the line speed of the token-ring line on the AS/400 system. Use the Display Line Description (DSPLIND) command, as follows, to determine the AS/400 token-ring line speed:

```
DSPLIND xxx
```

where xxx is the name of the token-ring line.

Use the PC Reference diskette to change the value of the PC token-ring adapter to match the AS/400 value.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the error message FAX0452 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you run the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover the following:

- The controller, fax send device, and fax control device status are ACTIVE.
- The fax receive device status is *RCYPND* or *RCYCNL*.

Cause: The fax receive device name you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 fax receive device name. Use the WRKCFGSTS command to display the fax receive device name on the AS/400 system. Verify that it matches the fax receive device entered when the fax controller was set up. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the error message CPF3397 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you run the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover the following:

- The controller, fax control device, and fax receive device status are ACTIVE.
- The fax send device status is *RCYPND* or *RCYCNL*.

Cause: The AS/400 fax send device name you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 fax send device name. Use the WRKCFGSTS command to display the fax send device name. Verify that it matches the fax send

device name that was entered when the fax controller was set up. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problem: After the fax controller starts, the FaxConcentrator Utility window appears. If someone started the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product on the AS/400 system, the following should occur:

- The last message that appears in the QFAXOPR message queue is FAX0196.
- The controller status and device status for the fax controller is VRYPND.
- You see message FAXC609 in QFAXOPR, which states that the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A utilities are already running.

Cause: Either you installed the FaxConcentrator Utility after the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Workstation Feature, or you did not install the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problem: During the fax controller startup process, the following OS/2 Communications Manager display appears.

```
Communications Manager

Originator . . . : IBMTRNET

LAN adapter 00 cannot be opened; insufficient receive buffer
space.

Note the message originator, number, date and time. Press
Enter. Check the message log for additional messages.

ACS0341C
```

Cause: The random access memory (RAM) buffer size that is configured for your IBM token-ring adapter is less than 16KB. Use your reference program to change the token-ring adapter RAM size to 16KB or greater.

Problem: During the fax controller startup process, the following OS/2 Communications Manager display appears.

```
Communications Manager

Originator . . . : IBMTRNET

LAN support cannot be started due to a lobe cable problem on IBM
Token-Ring adapter 00.

Note the message originator, number, date and time. Press
Enter. Check the message log for additional messages.

ACS0316C
```

Cause: The token-ring cable is disconnected. Check the cabling of the network.

Twinaxial Configuration Problems

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, the last message in the QFAXOPR message queue is FAX0196. The job log for the fax control job that is described in message FAX0196 contains messages CPF5379, FAX0141, and FAX0193. When you run the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status and device status for the fax controller are RCYPND.

Cause: The fax controller is not powered on. Power on the fax controller and start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product again.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status and device status for the fax controller are ACTIVE. You might also see three additional devices that the AS/400 auto-configuration support created. No mode description appears for the fax control device.

Cause: The AS/400 local network ID you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 system local network ID. Use the DSPNETA command to display the AS/400 local network ID. Verify that it matches the AS/400 local network ID you entered when you set up the fax controller. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature. You also have to VARY OFF and delete all extra devices.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status and device status for the fax controller is ACTIVE. No mode description appears for the fax control device.

Cause: The AS/400 default local location you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 system-default local location. Use the

DSPNETA command to display the AS/400 default local location. Verify that it matches the AS/400 default local location that was entered when the fax controller was set up. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller and all fax devices are RCYPND. No mode descriptions appear.

Cause: The local workstation device is either not created or not varied on, as described in the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*. If the device was not created, create a device as shown in the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Note: If the device was created but is *varied off*, vary it on.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message FAX0452 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you run the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status and device status for the fax controller are ACTIVE. You might also see additional devices that the AS/400 auto-configuration support created. No mode description appears for the fax control device.

Cause: The fax control device name that you entered when setting up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 fax control device name. Use the WRKCFGSTS command to display the fax control device. Verify that it matches the fax control device you entered when you set up the fax controller. Reinstall the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature to correct the configuration parameters in error. Also, vary off and delete any additional devices that were created.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message FAX0452 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status and device status for the fax controller is ACTIVE. You may also see an additional device that the AS/400 auto-configuration created. No mode description appears for the fax receive device.

Cause: The fax receive device name you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 fax receive device name. Use the WRKCFGSTS command to display the fax receive device name. Verify that it matches the fax receive device name entered when setting up the fax controller. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature. Also, vary on and delete any additional devices that were created.

Problem: After the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts, you see the message CPF3397 in the QFAXOPR message queue. When you use the WRKCFGSTS command, you discover that the controller status and device status for the fax controller is ACTIVE. You might also see an additional device that the AS/400 auto-configuration support created. No mode description appears for the fax send device.

Cause: The fax send device name you entered when you set up the fax controller does not match the AS/400 fax send device name. Use the WRKCFGSTS

command to display the fax send device name. Verify that it matches the fax send device name that you entered when you set up the fax controller. Correct the configuration parameters in error by reinstalling the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature. Also, vary off and delete any additional devices that were created.

Problem: After the fax controller starts, the FaxConcentrator Utility window appears. If someone started the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product on the AS/400 system, the last message that was written to the QFAXOPR message queue is FAX0196. The controller status and device status for the fax controller are RCYPND.

Cause: You installed the FaxConcentrator Utility after you installed the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature, or you did not install the Facsimile Support for AS/400 workstation feature.

Problems Sending Faxes

An unsuccessful SNDFAX request results in a message in the QFAXOPR message queue. Sequentially, if you specified a user data queue, user message queue, or both on the SNDFAX request, a message is sent to them as well. In addition, a record that indicates an unsuccessful send appears in the QAFFTLLOG transaction log.

Problem: The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product starts normally; but the first send fax (SNDFAX) command fails with message FAXC101. You see several error messages in the QFAXOPR message queue, including message PQT0012.

Cause: Either of the following situations could cause this problem:

- You did not install the AFP Compatibility Fonts (optional part 8 of the IBM Operating System/400 Version 3 (OS/400) operating system) on your system. Install this option of the OS/400 operating system and send the fax again.
- If you are using an Integrated Fax Adapter, the settings for QFAXMODE and QSPWTR may be incorrect. A mismatch of parameters between the Integrated Fax Adapter and QSPWTR mode can result in errors. Refer to the following table for the correct settings. Do NOT change the QFAXMODE and QSPWTR modes when using the Integrated Fax Adapter.

Table 8. Correct Settings for QFAXMODE and QSPWTR

Parameter	QFAXMODE	QSPWTR
Class-of-service	#CONNECT	#CONNECT
Maximum sessions	8	8
Maximum conversations	8	8
Locally controlled sessions	0	4
Pre-established sessions	0	0
Inbound pacing value	3	63
Outbound pacing value	7	63
Maximum length of request unit	*CALC	*CALC
Data compression	*NETATR	*NETATR
Inbound data compression	*RLE	*RLE
Outbound data compression	*RLE	*RLE

Problem: The SNDFAX completion message indicates that a call failed because the device at this telephone number is not a fax device (message FAXC703).

Cause: Either the telephone number that was entered on the SNDFAX command is not a number for a valid fax device, or bad or incorrect tones were received.

Verify that you entered the destination number correctly. You may also verify that your fax telephone line is configured for the type of call (such as long distance) you are attempting.

This error can also occur when the configuration parameters in the fax controller for the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A are not set to the correct values for your telephone network. You should first try to send the fax again. If the call continues to fail with message FAXC703, check the level of the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A and FaxConcentrator Utilities as described in the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Problem: The SNDFAX completion message indicates that a call failed because the telephone line is not connected (message FAXC704) or that no dial tone was detected (FAXC705).

Cause: This problem could be the result of either of the following situations:

- If you are using the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A, the telephone cable is not working properly, or the telephone cable is not connected to the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A. If the cable is not connected, connect it to the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A. If the cable is connected, make sure that you are using the cable that was shipped with the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A. The larger end (RJ45 connector) should plug into the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A card. The smaller end (RJ11 connector) should plug into the telephone jack. Using a cable with two RJ11 connectors can cause unreliable results.
- If you are using the Integrated Fax Adapter, the digital access arrangement cable may not be properly connected to the Integrated Fax Adapter. Ensure that the digital access arrangement cable is connected and enter the SNDFAX command again.

Problem: The SNDFAX completion messages indicate that a FAXC1F7 error occurred.

Cause: Your application released the spooled file before the SNDFAX command was submitted. Remove the command to release the spooled file from your application.

Problem: The SNDFAX completion messages indicate that a spooled file has already been sent as a fax (message FAX0307).

Cause: You ran a SNDFAX command against a spooled file that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is currently processing. For example, your application can be monitoring for a fax error condition. The application then attempts another SNDFAX function before the spooled file has been placed on the QFFSNDERR output queue. Once you submit a SNDFAX command for a spooled file, the command processing must complete before you can submit another SNDFAX command for the same file.

Problem: The SNDFAX completion message indicates that a call failed due to a no ring-back-tone detected condition (message FAXC706).

Cause: A pause character needs to be inserted into the telephone number. For more information about valid control codes, see Chapter 2. Outbound Fax Support. The following examples show the use of control codes:

Example A:

If you need to dial a 9 to make an external call, enter the telephone number as follows on the SNDFAX command:

```
9+1+5071234567
```

Example B:

If you do not need to dial a 9 to make an external call, enter the telephone number as follows on the SNDFAX command:

```
1+5071234567
```

Problem: The SNDFAX command ran, but the fax takes a very long time to be sent.

Cause: You may want to use the Work with Shared Storage Pools (WRKSHRPOOL) command on the AS/400 system to check the value for *SPOOL. The value for *SPOOL should be at least 1500. If it is not at least 1500, change it to that value.

Note: If you have auto-tuning on your AS/400 system, the system can adjust this value later.

Problem: The SNDFAX completion message indicates that the size of the faxed document is too large (message FAXC405).

Cause: The Integrated Fax Adapter has a limitation on the number of pages that it can send that is smaller than the limitation for the external fax controller. Use *YES for the TRANSFORM parameter on the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command to retry the fax.

Problem: When sending a fax from the OfficeVision product, the document gets printed rather than faxed. Error messages indicate that the spooled file cannot be found.

Cause: Verify that the printer that is specified on the DOCPRTDEV parameter of the CFGFAXSRV command is not an active printer. If the value for the DOCPRTDEV parameter is *NONE, verify that the printer and output queue that are specified for the document are not active printers.

Problem: The F15 key on the OfficeVision Send displays does not work.

Cause: The OfficeVision feature of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product may have become disabled or was not enabled. Enter the following command, then sign off the AS/400 system and sign on again.

```
CFGFAXSRV OPTION(*ENABLEOV400) ENBLOV400(*ENABLE)
```

Problem: Enhanced Services jobs end abnormally with error message FRQ9000.

Cause: Verify that Enhanced Services ended prior to performing a Save System (SAVSYS *NONSYS) operation. Enhanced Services files exist in the QUSRSYS library.

Problem: You are using a GammaLink fax adapter in your external fax controller and are unable to use C:\FAX\QFQM or C:\FAX\GFSETUP.

Cause: Ensure that SET GFAX=C:\FAX is in both the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. It may also be helpful to perform a trace on the external fax controller. For instructions, see "Starting a Trace on the External Controller" on page 90.

Problem: You attempt to send a fax using either the CRTFAXNOTE, SBMFAX, or SNOFAX command. The attempt to send fails with the following messages in the QFAXOPR message queue: 'FAXC101 - an error was detected by fax controller FAXD01 while processing print data being sent by the AS/400 spool writer' and 'FAX0321 - Error occurred during HPT processing'.

Cause: The AFP Compatibility Fonts are not installed. Install the AFP Compatibility fonts, End Fax Support, Restart Fax Support, and try the request again.

Problem: You used the 7852-400 modem to send a fax, but the request failed with the following message:

CPA3388: Attributes of file XXX not supported for device XXXXXX.

Cause: You may be trying to send data of a type other than *AFPDS through the modem and your release of Fax Support is V3R7, V4R1, or V4R2. Try one of the following:

- Create the spooled file again, specifying *AFPDS, and resubmit the fax
- Specify DEVTYPE(*AFPDS) on the Override with Printer File (OVRPRTF) command to create the spooled file with a data type of *AFPDS

Fax Output Problems

Problem: The characters that are printed in fax output do not match the characters you see when the same document is printed on a printer.

Cause: All fonts that are used to process faxed spooled files are host-resident. When you fax the spooled file, the print support substitutes host-resident font character sets for font-global identifiers (FGID) that are specified when the spooled file was created. One of the following may have occurred:

- You may not have installed a host-resident font that matches the printer-resident font on your AS/400 system.
- The map fidelity for the FGID you used may not be exact.

The font substitution that is performed for the outbound fax is the same as for a 3825 printer.

See the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide* for information on the required printer fonts. See the *Printer Device Programming* for an explanation of printer-resident to host-resident font character set mapping.

Problem: When you fax OfficeVision documents, the tab spaces in the fax output print as divide (÷) characters.

Cause: The DEV parameter on the Print Document (PRTDOC) command specifies the name of a 5219 printer. If you select a 5219 printer, the tab spaces on the fax output print as divide (÷) characters. To correct this problem, specify for the DEV parameter a printer with a device type of *IPDS. Otherwise, you can create a dummy printer device, as described in “Creating a Fax Printer Device” on page 24.

Problems Printing Faxes

Problem: When using the PRTDOC command to print a document that the FILFAX command created, the spooled file status is *F/N*. No output is printed.

Cause: The DEV parameter on the PRTDOC command specifies the name of a printer that supports an SNA character string (SCS). To correct this problem, specify a printer for the DEV parameter that has a device type of *IPDS. Otherwise, you can create a dummy printer device, as described in “Creating a Fax Printer Device” on page 24, and direct the spooled file to the dummy device.

Problem: When you used the PRTFAX command or the FILFAX command, the resulting fax image appears to be clipped on the right or bottom edge of the paper.

Cause: The fax image is larger than the physical paper for one of the following reasons:

- The printable area on a page for the printer you are using is smaller than the fax image.
- The sending fax machine added a text header line to the top of the fax image.
- The fax image for one page is actually multiple pages that were grouped together at the sending fax machine.

To correct the problem, you can print or file the fax again. Specify the *SCALE option on the PRTFAX or FILFAX command. If multiple fax pages are grouped together, ask the sender to send the fax again.

Note: You can use the *SCALE, and *CENTER options only for documents that are filed as *MODCA or *MODCAFAX.

Problem: When you print a fax, you receive a message that the starting page is greater than the ending page (FAX0612).

Cause: The fax you are trying to print may not be completely received. Wait a couple minutes and try the PRTFAX command again.

Problem: When using the Override with Printer File (OVRPRTF) command, you specified a drawer, but the drawer override did not work.

Cause: If you specify the *E1 drawer on the OVRPRTF command, you must also specify *AUTOCUT on the FORMFEED attribute.

Miscellaneous Facsimile Support for AS/400 Problems

Problem: When you run the Restore Licensed Program (RSTLICPGM) command, you receive the following message:

```
MSGCPF0170: Program QFQMRMB in *LIBL not found
```

Cause: To run RSTLICPGM for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, QTEMP must be in your user library list. Use the Add Library List Entry (ADDLIBLE) command to add QTEMP to your library list, then try running the RSTLICPGM command again.

Problem: After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, the Transaction log job ends normally. No transaction data is logged.

Cause: This can happen for one of the following reasons:

- Instead of using the ENDFAXSPT command to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, you used the End Subsystem command (ENDSBS SBS(QFAXSBS)) with the *IMMED option. This places extra *END requests in the QFFTLOGDQ transaction log data queue. This causes the transaction log to end the next time the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is started. Use the ENDFAXSPT command to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product and delete the QFFTLOGDQ transaction log data queue, then run STRFAXSPT.
- The QFAXOPR message queue is full. Clear the message queue, use the ENDFAXSPT support to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, then restart it using the STRFAXSPT command.

Run the End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command. Once the QFAXSBS subsystem ends, use the following command to remove the transaction log data queue:

```
DLTDTAQ QGPL/QFFTLOGDQ
```

When you use the STRFAXSPT command to start fax support again, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product re-creates the data queue for you.

Problem: After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, you see the error message FAX0196 in the QFAXOPR message queue. The job log for the fax control job that is described in message FAX0196 contains messages CPF5198 and FAX0191.

Cause: Check for the following errors:

- The fax controller was powered off while the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product was active. Power-on the fax controller and start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product again.
- A fax controller connection failure occurred while the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product was active. Correct the token-ring, Ethernet, or twinaxial connection problem and start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product again.

Problem: The QFAXOPR message contains a message that there was a fax communications failure during a receive operation (FAXC201).

Cause: Someone might have called your fax modem from a telephone and hung up. This is the case if the return codes in the second-level online help information are as follows:

- For the Integrated Fax Adapter:

```
X'0021'
```

```
X'0000'
```

```
X'0050'
```

- For the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A:

```
X'0021'
```

X'FF12'

X'1211'

Problem: The QFFWRK folder and QFFCPY subfolder contain a large number of documents, particularly when you send faxes to distribution lists.

Cause: The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product uses these folders when Enhanced Services is enabled to use the OfficeVision product. The documents in these folders are copies, created from a user's folder. If Enhanced Services has not removed all of the documents in these folders, you can delete them. However, you should first ensure that the documents are not in use by another fax user.

Other Helpful Hints for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product

The following are a few helpful hints when using the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.

- Unless you are removing the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product from your AS/400 system, do not delete the QFAXOPR message queue. This message queue is created when you install the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, and is required for operation of the product. If the QFAXOPR message queue is deleted, you must use the Create Message Queue (CRTMSGQ) command to re-create it.
- If the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product has a large number of users and applications, it is a good idea to clear the QFAXOPR message queue from time to time. To do so, use the CLRMSGQ QFAXOPR command. This keeps the QFAXOPR message queue from filling up.
- The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product uses the QFAXJOBQ job queue. To prevent errors, use this job queue only for fax jobs.
- In some situations, you may need to adjust printer performance for sending faxes. For information, see the *Printer Device Programming* book.
- Never remove files or place spooled files to you want to fax on the QFFSNDFAX queue or the fax writer queue (for example, the FAXSND01P queue). Use the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command to send a fax. If you place the spooled file directly on the QFFSNDFAX queue, fax support will not send the fax. Placing the spooled file on the fax writer queue could cause that spooled file or an existing spooled file on that queue to be sent to the wrong destination. This could also cause the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product to stop processing outbound faxes.
- If you have a regularly scheduled system shutdown (IPL) or cleanup, include the ENDFAXSPT command as part of the process. This ensures that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product ends normally. You can then run the STRFAXSPT command during your startup procedures. For more information about these commands, see "Chapter 2. Outbound Fax Support" on page 15.
- Use the End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. Do *not* use ENDSBS SBS(QFAXSBS) OPTION(*IMMED) to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. The ENDFAXSPT command allows current send and receive operations to complete, and protects the integrity of the transaction log data. Specifying the ENDSBS command with the *IMMED option places extra *END requests in the QFFTLOGDQ. This ends the transaction log the next time the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is started.
- When a fax request is unsuccessful, an error message (FAXC70x) is logged in the following sequence:
 1. QFAXOPR message queue

2. TLOG transaction log (QUSRSYS/QAFFTLOG)
3. User data queue
4. User message queue

Messages are logged in this order for every telephone number that is specified on an unsuccessful SNDFAX or SBMFAX command. A FAXC103 error message is issued in the same order as is previously described for FAXC70x messages. After fax support attempts each telephone number and the call is unsuccessful, it moves the spooled file to the QFFSENDERR output queue.

- To create graphics or images for use as overlays or page segments in fax documents, refer to the *Advanced Function Printing Utilities for AS/400 User's Guide* and the *AS/400 Guide to Advanced Presentation and Print Services Facility* manuals.

For using graphics and images in OfficeVision documents, refer to the *Learning About OfficeVision/400 Word Processing* and *Using OfficeVision/400 Word Processing* manuals. If you are using OfficeVision/400 and require signatures to be included in the documents, you will need to acquire a PC product (i.e. Hijack Pro) to create the image in IOCA format. These images must be in black and white only. Colors or greys will not work in OfficeVision/400 documents. Also, documents must be saved with the 'no wrapper' option to work with OfficeVision/400.

- To improve overall fax performance, keep the number of faxes being sent and the size of distribution lists as small as possible. For example, if you have 500 faxes to send, it would be better to send out 250, wait for an hour or two, and then send the remaining faxes.

Service Procedures

This section describes how to do the following:

- Collect information for your service representative.
- Apply a program temporary fix (PTF).

The Work with Problems (WRKPRB) command or the Analyze Problem (ANZPRB) command can help you to perform problem analysis on the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. Before you perform problem analysis, use the End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command.

You may need to run the Analyze Problem (ANZPRB) command or Work with Problems (WRKPRB) command to analyze a problem. If so, first use the ENDFAXSPT command to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.

If you think that your problem may require an authorized program analysis report (APAR), report it to the AS/400 operator. The system operator can report the problem to the service representative. The service representative must decide if an authorized program analysis report (APAR) is required. If so, the service representative assigns an APAR number to your problem and tells you what information to collect.

Preparing an Authorized Program Analysis Report (APAR)

Before you contact support service, use the AS/400 online recovery information and the AS/400 online cause to analyze the problem. Contact your service

representative to help isolate the problem. If you suspect the problem is an IBM product problem, prepare an APAR with enough information to help isolate and re-create the problem.

Attach a detailed description of the problem and detailed instructions on how to re-create the problem. Incomplete information can result in an unusable APAR.

AS/400 Information

Run the Create APAR (CRTAPAR) command to help collect the necessary information. For help in creating and submitting an APAR, see the *AS/400 Licensed Internal Code Diagnostic Aids - Volume 1* and *AS/400 Licensed Internal Code Diagnostic Aids - Volume 2*. When you prepare an APAR, include that information with the following:

- A printout of the AS/400 job log
- An AS/400 job dump
Enter the Start Service Job (STRSRVJOB) command. Then, run the Dump Job (DMPJOB) command. This produces a dump of the job that was running at the time of the failure, as well as any jobs running in the QFAXSBS subsystem.
- A printout of the program temporary fix for the QFAX library.
Using the Display Program Temporary Fix (DSPPTF) command, print the program temporary fix for the QFAX library.
- Any other information
Include any other information, such as history information, that can be useful in isolating and re-creating the problem.

Fax Controller Information

If the problem involves a fax controller, include the following information for that fax controller when you prepare an APAR:

- The fax controller hardware configuration. This is a description of the fax controller hardware, including the personal computer model, storage size, disk size, and adapters.
- The OS/2 program environment and operating system level. This is a description of what (if any) other programs or application programs were running or installed in storage at the time of the failure.
- Any OS/2 messages that appear on the display. If you have attached a printer to the personal computer, press the Print Screen key to get a copy of the message.
- A copy of the fax controller configuration and message files. To copy these files, do the following:
 1. Insert a blank formatted diskette in the A: drive.
 2. On the OS/2 Group Main menu, select *OS/2 Full Screen* and press the Enter key.
 3. Type `\FS_400\RUNCPYFS` at the OS/2 command prompt and press the Enter key.
This command copies the fax controller files to the diskettes. When all the files are copied, the OS/2 command prompt returns.

Applying or Removing a Program Temporary Fix (PTF)

PTFs for the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product are distributed on an AS/400 PTF tape or through a support system. PTFs for both the AS/400 code and the fax

controller workstation feature code are applied and removed like other AS/400 PTFs. Use the PTF procedure that is described in the *System Operation*.

Enhanced Services Problem Analysis

This section describes how to solve the problems users most commonly encounter when running the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Enhanced Services. The following sections describe how to locate error messages and provide suggestions to solve the problems.

Locating Error Messages

You can use the following methods to help you locate the problem:

- Check message queues
- Check if a job log exists
- Check the status of outbound faxes
- Display log entries of inbound faxes

Message Queues

Display the QFAXOPR message queue to begin solving problems. A workstation message is always sent if an outbound or inbound fax request fails.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product sends messages to the QFAXOPR message queue. The prefix FAX or FRQ at the beginning of the message identification number and message text identifies a Facsimile Support for AS/400 message. General Facsimile Support for AS/400 messages use the FAX prefix; Enhanced Services uses the FRQ prefix.

If an outbound fax request fails, fax support also sends a message to the requesting user. Included in the message is the Facsimile Support for AS/400 message identifier for the failed request. To ensure that messages are sent to the requesting user, ensure that completion acknowledgment is always set to *YES on the SBMFAX command.

Job Logs

Fax support creates a job log each time it processes a fax request if one of the following conditions occurs:

- An error occurs during generation of the fax spooled file.
- An error occurs during the SNDFAX command.

Read through the job log for additional information on the error.

Outbound Fax Status

Use the CHKFAXSTS command to display the status of all outbound faxes. If a fax transmission remains in one step for a prolonged time or the status is *Errors occurred*, additional steps may be required. See “Outbound Problems” on page 88.

Inbound Fax Status

Use the WRKRCVFAX command to display the status of inbound faxes. Display the log entry for a received fax to determine if the fax was properly handled. If there

were any errors in printing, filing, or routing for a received fax, fax support records detailed messages to help you in problem analysis.

Outbound Problems

Most problems are noticeable when you are checking the status of an outbound fax. The status clearly states if there was a problem either during the generation or transmission of the fax. You should also notice if the status seems to stay the same for a prolonged time period. This could signify that you need to do further problem analysis.

Status Messages

The following sections list various fax status messages and describe what you should do for each problem.

Waiting to Create Status Message: If the fax status is *Waiting to Create*, perform one of the following steps to locate and solve the problem.

- Enter the following command to verify that Enhanced Services is active:
WRKACTJOB SBS(QFQSBS)

If there are no active jobs in the subsystem, enter the following command:

```
STRFAXSPT FAXD(*NONE) ENHSRV(*YES)
```

- Enter the following command to check the status of the QFQSRJQ job queue:
WRKJOBQ JOBQ(QFAX/QFQSRJQ)

If the status of the queue is held, enter the following command from the command line to release the queue:

```
RLSJOBQ JOBQ(QFAX/QFQSRJQ)
```

- If none of the above problems exist, enter the following command from the command line:
WRKJOBQ JOBQ(QFAX/QFQSRJQ)

If jobs are waiting to be submitted, it is usually an indication that the system work load is heavy. You need to do one of the following:

- Change the activity level needs for the subsystem.
- Change the maximum active jobs value for the QFQSRJQ job queue entry in the QFQSBS subsystem.

Creating Status Message: If the fax status is *Creating*, the fax spooled file is still being created. If no errors occurred while fax support generated the spooled file, the fax status changes to *Sending* or *Deferred* once the spooled file is created.

If the status does not change, the job that is generating the fax may have stopped due to an error. Use the WRKACTJOB SBS(QFQSBS) command to see if any job has the status of *MSGW*. If a job has that status, respond to the message to allow the job to continue running. If, after you respond to the message, the status remains *MSGW*, use the End Job (ENDJOB) command to end the job.

If the status remains unchanged, you should reset the fax status. See the *ù* for more information on resetting the status of a fax.

Sending Status Message: If the fax status is *Sending*, do the following:

1. Make sure that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is started. If not, use the STRFAXSPT command to start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.
2. Make sure that your fax description is started and able to handle outbound fax requests.
3. Make sure that the Enhanced Services status job is started. The job name for the status job is QFQSNDDSTS. Enhanced Services receives completion information from the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. It then changes the status for a fax request from *Sending* to some other value when it receives completion acknowledgment. If this job is not started, use the ENDFAXSPT command to end Enhanced Services. Then, use the STRFAXSPT command to start the Enhanced Services subsystem and associated jobs.

If none of the previous descriptions match your situation, enter the CHKFAQSTS command and select option 5 to work with the status details. On the Work with Status Log display, there is a *Fax spool OUTQ* field. Follow the following instructions for the specified OUTQ values.

QFFSNDFAQ

The fax spooled file has not been sent. Start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product if it is not already running. This could also indicate that a line is not available for sending the fax.

FAXSND01P

The fax spooled file is in the process of sending to the fax description, or the fax description is waiting for completion acknowledgment. Take no further action, except to wait for fax support to record the completion messages.

QFFSNDFAQ

The fax was successfully sent. If the status of the fax is still *Sending*, see “Resetting Fax Status” in the following section for further assistance.

QFFSNDERR

The fax has been not been sent successfully. If the status of the fax is still *Sending*, see “Resetting Fax Status” in the following section for further assistance.

Errors Occurred Status Message: If the fax status is *Errors occurred*, work with the fax status and display details for the failing step. The detailed messages for the failed step should explain why the request failed or what the next step should be.

Error Reset Status Message: If the fax status is *Error reset*, this is an indication that fax support reset the fax status. No further action is required.

Resetting Fax Status

To reset the fax status, perform the following steps:

1. Type CHKFAQSTS command at a command line and press F4 (Prompt).
2. Change the RESET parameter to *YES and press the Enter key.
3. On the Check Fax Status display, select option 8 (Reset status) for the destination log entry status that is in error.
4. Press the Enter key on the confirmation screen. The status changes to Error reset, which allows you to perform other operations on the log entry.

See the ù for additional information on the reset function of the CHKFAQSTS command.

Errors at *GENERATE or *SNDFAX Steps

If errors occurred during the *GENERATE or *SNDFAX step when faxing a document, verify that the document is printable. Use the OfficeVision or Enhanced Services print fax option to print the document. Verify that a spooled file was created. If no spooled file was created, do the following:

1. View the job log that was created during the step from the Check Fax Status display. When you view a status entry, use the F10 (Display Job Log) function to view any detailed messages that were received during the step.
2. Set the print error log parameter to *YES and print the document again. This prints a log with the document. The log provides detailed messages that explain why the document was not printed.
3. Verify that the device name that is used when you print the document supports all printing functions that are required for the document.

Fax Flow through Output Queues

As an outbound fax request is processed, the fax spooled file flows through different output queues. Knowing which output queue fax support uses during the different steps can aid in problem analysis. Table 9 describes the various output queues.

Table 9. Output Queues

Step	Queue Name	Description
Personal computer document to be faxed is received on the AS/400 system	QFQFS4PRTD	Where Client Access places personal computer documents to be faxed
Fax is created by SBMFAX command	QFQOUTQ	Where the fax spooled file is created and placed
SNDFAX command is processed	QFFSNDFAX	Where the fax spooled file resides after submitting the SNDFAX command
Completion acknowledgment is sent	FAXSND01P	Where the fax spooled file resides when it is being sent to the fax description and while the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is waiting for completion acknowledgment
Transmission is successful	QFFSND SAV	Where the fax spooled file resides after a successful fax transmission
Transmission is not successful	QFFSNDERR	Where the fax spooled file resides after an unsuccessful fax transmission

Starting a Trace on the External Controller

This section describes how to perform a trace on your external fax controller. The trace information can help you determine the source of controller problems.

Setting up a Trace

To set up a trace on your external fax controller, complete the following steps:

- If the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is not started on your external controller, do the following:
 1. Open an OS/2 window from the Desktop.
 2. Change to the FS_400 directory and press the Enter key.

```
C:\>CD FS_400
```

3. Make the subdirectory TRACE within the FS_400 directory and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\>MD TRACE
4. Change to the TRACE subdirectory and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\>CD TRACE
5. You can view the trace data from the Facsimile Support for AS/400 icons as well as save the data in a file. To do so, create a file that is called SCREEN in the TRACE subdirectory. Otherwise, skip to step 7.
C:\FS_400\TRACE\>E SCREEN
6. You can use an editor to exit and save the SCREEN file with no extension.
7. Type the following to exit the OS/2 window and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\>EXIT
8. From your AS/400 session, enter the STRFAXSPT command to start your external fax controller.
9. Re-create the problem for which you are running the trace.
10. Enter the ENDFAXSPT command on the AS/400 system. Fax support should have created a file in the C:\FS_400\TRACE\ subdirectory. This file contains the trace information .
11. To stop tracing on your external controller, delete the TRACE subdirectory.

Note: Before you delete the TRACE subdirectory, be sure to copy or save the trace data on a diskette, or print it.

- If the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is already started on your external controller, do the following:
 1. Open an OS/2 window from the Desktop.
 2. Change to the FS_400 directory and press the Enter key.
C:\>CD FS_400
 3. Make the subdirectory TRACE.DIR within the FS_400 directory and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\>MD TRACE.DIR
 4. Change to the TRACE.DIR subdirectory and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\>CD TRACE.DIR
 5. You can view the trace data from the Facsimile Support for AS/400 icons as well as save the data in a file. To do so, create a file that is called SCREEN in the TRACE.DIR subdirectory. If not, skip to step 8.
C:\FS_400\TRACE.DIR\>E SCREEN
 6. You can use an editor to exit and save the SCREEN file with no extension.
 7. Change to the FS_400 directory and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\TRACE.DIR\>CD..
 8. Rename the subdirectory from TRACE.DIR to TRACE and press the Enter key.
C:\FS_400\>rename TRACE.DIR TRACE
 9. Type the following and press the Enter key to exit the OS/2 window.
C:\FS_400\>EXIT
 10. From your AS/400 session, enter the STRFAXSPT command to start your external fax controller.
 11. Re-create the problem for which you are running the trace.

12. Enter the ENDFAXSPT command on the AS/400 system. Fax support should have created a file that contains the trace information in the C:\FS_400\TRACE\ directory.
13. To stop tracing on your external controller, delete the TRACE subdirectory.

Note: Before you delete the TRACE subdirectory, be sure to copy or save the trace data on a diskette, or print it.

Facsimile Support for AS/400 Subsystem and Workstation Configuration Status Files

This section describes the contents of the fax subsystem, QFAXSBS, and the results of the Work with Configuration Status (WRKCFGSTS) command after you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. You may find this information helpful during problem analysis and resolution. If the contents of your QFAXSBS subsystem or the results of your WRKCFGSTS command do not match those described in this section, display the messages in the QFAXOPR message queue or the QSYSOPR message queue.

To work with configuration status, enter the WRKCFGSTS command for device FAXD01 as follows:

```
WRKCFGSTS *CTL FAXD01
```

External Fax Controller

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for an external fax controller, the QFAXSBS subsystem should contain the following:

- FAXCTL01
- FAXMSTCTL
- FAXRCV01
- FAXSND01P
- FAXTRNLOG

Note: This list assumes that you used the default names on the Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command. It also assumes that you have two PC fax cards configured as *BOTH.

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for an external fax controller, the WRKCFGSTS command should display the following:

```

Work with Configuration Status

Position to . . . . . Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
1=Vary on 2=Vary off 5=Work with job 8=Work with description
9=Display mode status 13=Work with APPN status...

Opt Description Status -----Job-----
  TRLIN1 ACTIVE
  FAXD01 ACTIVE
  FAXCTL01 ACTIVE
    QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXSND01P LGRASS 008347
    QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXCTL01 LGRASS 008348
  FAXSND01C ACTIVE
    QSPWTR ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXSND01P QSPLJOB 008349
  FAXRCV01 ACTIVE
    QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXRCV01 LGRASS 008350

Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel F23=More options F24=More keys

```

Integrated Fax Adapter

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for an Integrated Fax Adapter, the QFAXSBS subsystem contains the following:

- FAXCTL01
- FAXMSTCTL
- FAXRCV01
- FAXRCV01
- FAXSND01P
- FAXTRNLOG

Note: This list assumes that you used the default names on the Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command, and that you have two ports configured as *BOTH.

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for an Integrated Fax Adapter, the WRKCFGSTS command should display the following:

```

Work with Configuration Status

Position to . . . . . Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
1=Vary on 2=Vary off 5=Work with job 8=Work with description
9=Display mode status 13=Work with APPN status...

Opt Description Status -----Job-----
BOOKFAX01 ACTIVE
FAXD01 ACTIVE
FAXCTL01 ACTIVE
QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXSND01P LGRASS 054183
QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXCTL01 LGRASS 054184
FAXSND01C ACTIVE
QSPWTR ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXSND01P QSPLJOB 054186
FAXRCV01 ACTIVE
QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXRCV01 LGRASS 054185
QFAXMODE ACTIVE/SOURCE FAXRCV01 LGRASS 054187

Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel F23=More options F24=More keys

```

7852-400 Modem

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for a 7852-400 modem, the QFAXSBS subsystem contains the following:

- FAXD01A
- FAXD01C
- FAXD01P
- FAXMSTCTL
- FAXTRNLOG

Note: This list assumes that you used the default names on the Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command, and that you have one port configured as *BOTH.

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for a 7852-400 modem, the WRKCFGSTS command should display the following:


```

Work with Configuration Status

Position to . . . . . Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Vary on   2=Vary off  5=Work with job  8=Work with description
  9=Display mode status 13=Work with APPN status...

Opt  Description      Status      -----Job-----
      FAXMODEM11      ACTIVE
      FAXD11          ACTIVE
      FAXASC11        ACTIVE      FAXD11A  LGRASS  124083

Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F12=Cancel  F23=More options  F24=More keys

```

PCI Hardware

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product on the analog PCI integrated remote access hardware, the QFAXSBS subsystem contains the following:

- FAXD01AA
- FAXD01AC
- FAXD01AP
- FAXMSTCTL
- FAXTRNLOG

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for an *IMANALOG, the WRKCFGSTS command should display the following:

```

Work with Configuration Status

Position to . . . . . Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
1=Vary on 2=Vary off 5=Work with job 8=Work with description
9=Display mode status 13=Work with APPN status...

Opt Description Status -----Job-----
FAXLINE01 ACTIVE
FAXD01 ACTIVE FAXD01AA LGRASS 029184
FAXIM01 ACTIVE

Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel F23=More options F24=More keys

```

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product on the ISDN PCI integrated remote access hardware, the QFAXSBS contains the following:

```

FAXD01DA FAXD01A
FAXD01DC FAXD01C
FAXD01DP FAXMSTCTL
FAXMSTCTL FAXTRNLOG
FAXTRNLOG
(for *SEND only) (for *RECEIVE only)

```

After you start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for an ISDN PCI Based Integrated Remote Access hardware controller, the WRKCFGSTS command should display the following:

```

Work with Configuration Status

Position to . . . . . Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
1=Vary on 2=Vary off 5=Work with job 8=Work with description
9=Display mode status 13=Work with APPN status...

Opt Description Status -----Job-----
FAXLINE1 ACTIVE
FAXD01 ACTIVE FAXD01DA LGRASS 027255
FAXIM01 ACTIVE

Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel F23=More options F24=More keys

```

Part 2. Reference

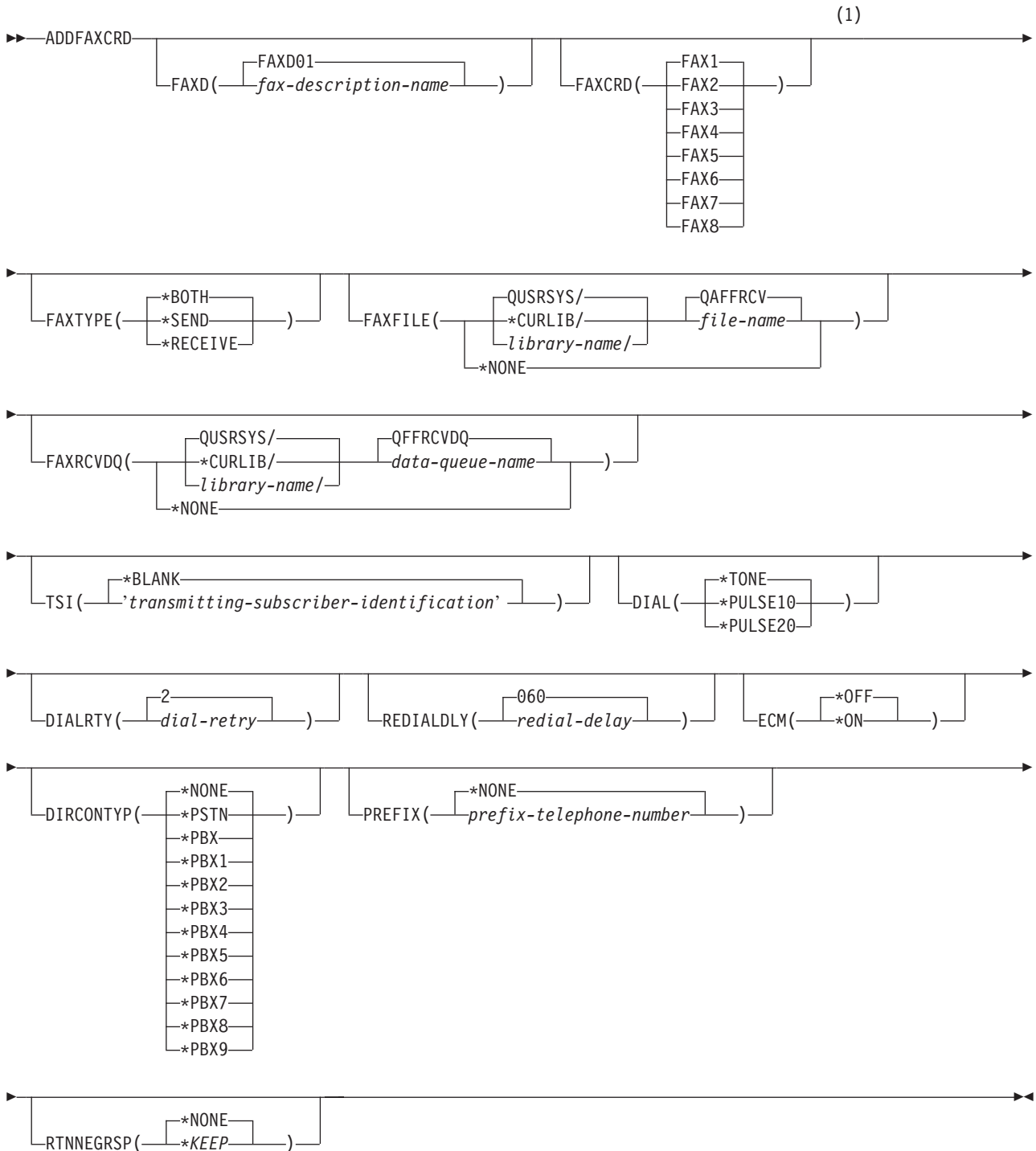
Chapter 9. Facsimile Support for AS/400 Control Language Commands

This chapter describes the Facsimile Support for AS/400 control language (CL) commands. The commands appear alphabetically, by command name. Descriptions include syntax diagrams and parameters for each command, rules for using the commands, and examples.

ADDFAXCRD

ADDFAXCRD (Add Fax Card) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Add Fax Card (ADDFAXCRD) command adds the description of a fax card or an Integrated Fax Adapter port to a fax description.

Restrictions

You cannot run this command if the active Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is using the specified fax description. You must have object operational, read data, and add data authority to the configuration file to add a fax card to a fax description.

Parameters

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax description to which you want to add the description of the fax card or port.

FAXD01: Adds the fax card description to the fax description FAXD01.

fax-description-name: The name of the fax description to which you want the fax card description added. This name can have a maximum length of 8 characters.

FAXCRD

Specifies the name of the fax card or port description to add to the fax description.

Notes:

- For the fax controller:
 - If you are using the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A card, the number at the end of the fax card description name must match the number of the PS/2 card slot on the fax controller where the fax card is located.
 - If you are using one or more GammaLink cards, the GammaLink cards should be placed in the lowest-numbered card slots on the fax controller. The fax card description name for the ADDFAXCRD command and GammaLink adapters does not need to match the number of the PS/2 card slot where the card is located on the fax controller.

For example, assume that you have GammaLink cards in slots 1 and 3 of the fax controller. In this case, the ADDFAXCRD fax card description name for the adapter in slot 1 should be FAX1. For the adapter in slot 3, the ADDFAXCRD fax card description names should be FAX2.

- If you are using a combination of FaxConcentrator Adapter/A cards and GammaLink adapters, the GammaLink adapters should be placed in the lowest-numbered card slots. The FaxConcentrator Adapter/A cards should be placed after the GammaLink cards. The fax card description must match the PS/2 card slot where the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A card is located.

For example, if you have a fax controller with GammaLink adapters in slots 1 and 3 and FaxConcentrator Adapter/A cards in slots 5 and 6, the four ADDFAXCRD commands should be as follows:

```
ADDFAXCRD FAXD(FAXD01) FAXCRD(FAX1) FAXTYPE(*BOTH) . . .
ADDFAXCRD FAXD(FAXD01) FAXCRD(FAX2) FAXTYPE(*BOTH) . . .
ADDFAXCRD FAXD(FAXD01) FAXCRD(FAX5) FAXTYPE(*BOTH) . . .
ADDFAXCRD FAXD(FAXD01) FAXCRD(FAX6) FAXTYPE(*BOTH) . . .
```

ADDFAXCRD

2. For the Integrated Fax Adapter, the card number at the end of the fax card description must match the number and the position of the port (either first or second) on the Integrated Fax Adapter.
3. For the 7852-400 modem and Remote Access hardware, FAX1 is the only valid value.

FAX1: The fax card named FAX1 (for the fax card located in card slot 1 (labeled 1(A)) of the fax controller, the uppermost fax port located on the Integrated Fax Adapter, the 7852-400 modem, or the Remote Access hardware) is added.

FAX2–FAX8: The value of FAX2-FAX8 for the fax cards that reside in slots 2-8. For example, the card in slot 3 is FAX3.

Notes:

1. For external fax controllers, use values FAX2 through FAX8.
2. For Integrated Fax Adapters, use FAX2 as the value of the second fax port, labeled port 2(B), on the Integrated Fax Adapter card. Values FAX3 through FAX8 are not valid for the Integrated Fax Adapter.

FAXTYPE

Specifies the type of fax functions this fax card supports.

***BOTH:** You can use the fax card or port to send outbound faxes and receive inbound faxes. *BOTH not allowed for fax controller of type *IMISDN.

***SEND:** You can use the fax card or port only to send outbound faxes.

***RECEIVE:** You can use the fax card or port only to receive inbound faxes.

FAXFILE

Specifies the qualified name of the database file to receive inbound faxes from this fax card or port. If this file does not exist when the card or port receives the first fax, fax support creates the file. If the fax card or port does not support inbound faxes (the FAXTYPE is *SEND), fax support ignores this parameter.

Possible library name values are:

QUSRSYS: The database file that receives the faxes resides in the QUSRSYS library.

***CURLIB:** The database file that receives the faxes resides in the current library of the job submitting the ADDFAXCRD command.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library that contains the database file to receive faxes.

Possible file name values are:

QAFFRCV: The QAFFRCV database file receives the faxes.

file-name: Specify the name of the database file to receive the faxes.

***NONE:** No database file exists. You can specify *NONE when you plan to use the fax card only to send outbound faxes (when FAXTYPE is *SEND).

FAXRCVDQ

Specifies the qualified name of the data queue to receive a message when an inbound fax from this card or port is received. This message provides the following information:

- The qualified database file name and member name where the fax is received
- The number of pages in the fax

See “Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format” on page 68, for a detailed description of the data queue message. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates this data queue if it does not exist when this card or port receives the first fax. If the fax card or port does not support inbound faxes; that is, FAXTYPE is *SEND; this parameter is ignored.

Possible library name values are:

QUSRSYS: The data queue that receives the message resides in the QUSRSYS library.

***CURLIB:** The data queue that receives the message resides in the current library of the job submitting the ADDFAXCRD command.

library-name: The name of the library where the data queue for the message resides.

Possible data queue name values are:

QFFRCVDQ: Fax support sends the message to the QFFRCVDQ data queue.

data-queue-name: The name of the data queue to receive the message.

***NONE:** No data queue exists. Fax support does not send a message when you receive an inbound fax from this card or port.

Note: Do not allow large numbers of messages to accumulate on the receive data queue. If messages accumulate on the queue and you later remove them, fax support does not reduce the size (or the allocated storage) of the queue. After you process all of the accumulated messages from the queue, delete the queue. The next time the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product needs the queue, it re-creates it at the smaller initial size.

TSI

Specifies the transmitting subscriber identification (TSI) that is assigned to this fax card or port. Fax support transmits this information to the destination fax node. The destination node determines how this information is used. For example, the information might appear on the operator’s panel of a fax machine or in a transaction log. The TSI information is printed at the top of a fax when it reaches its destination. You can use this parameter with the TSIBNR on the Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command to print the TSI information on each page of the fax.

***BLANK:** No TSI exists. Fax support transmits a series of 20 blank characters.

Notes:

1. Although *BLANK is the default, we recommend that you enter a value for the transmitting subscriber identification.
2. If you do not enter a TSI value, we recommend that you use a cover page in order to meet FCC regulations.

Note:

'transmitting-subscriber-identification': The TSI assigned to this card or port. The TSI can contain any of the following:

ADDFAXCRD

- Alphabetic characters:

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

- Numeric characters:

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

- Special characters:

. , : () / - +

Specify a maximum of 20 characters, digits, and blanks. If you specify fewer than 20 characters and blanks, fax support pads the TSI with blanks. Users typically specify the telephone number of the line that is attached to the fax card as the TSI value.

Notes:

1. Some countries require the TSI to begin with a + character.
2. If the TSI field contains blanks or any of the special characters, you must enclose the character string in apostrophes.
3. The FaxConcentrator Adapter/A can use only numeric characters (1-9), blank, and the + character for the transmitted TSI value.
4. For the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A, uppercase and lowercase characters that are entered for the TSI are printed in uppercase on your fax. They are not transmitted by the Fax Manager. The Fax Manager transmits only numbers, blanks, and + characters.

DIAL

Specifies the type of dialing supported by the telephone line that connects the fax card or port.

***TONE:** The telephone line that connects the fax card or port uses tone dialing.

***PULSE10:** The telephone line that connects the fax card or port uses 10-pulse-per-second dialing.

***PULSE20:** The telephone line that connects the fax card or port uses 20-pulse-per-second dialing.

DIALRTY

Specifies the number of dial attempts to be made before fax support considers the call unsuccessful. Use this parameter with the REDIALDLY parameter.

2: The default number of times to try a call again. The call is dialed three times (the initial call, followed by two retries) before fax support considers it unsuccessful.

dial-retry: Specifies the number of retries, from 0 to 5. If you specify a value of 0, fax support does not retry the call.

Note: In some countries, the public-switched telephone network (PSTN) requirements set the maximum number of consecutive dial attempts to a telephone number. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product attempts the call the number of times you specify on the DIALRTY parameter. If the number of dial attempts for a call violates the PSTN limit for that country, the fax controller overrides the number of dial attempts specified on the DIALRTY parameter and limits the number of attempts.

The FaxConcentrator Adapter/A controller records, in a call management table, all telephone numbers that fail due to PSTN violations. The fax controller maintains this table. New dial attempts to telephone numbers that have failed through the fax controller where a previous violation was detected may remain inhibited until the call management table is reset. This table is reset when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is ended and then started again.

REDIALDLY

Specifies how long to wait before dialing again after an unsuccessful call. During this wait time, the fax card or port does not process other inbound or outbound faxes. Use this parameter with the DIALRTY parameter. If the DIALRTY parameter is 0, fax support ignores the REDIALDLY parameter.

060: Wait 60 seconds before you retry an unsuccessful call.

redial-delay: The number of seconds, from 000 to 360, to wait before retrying an unsuccessful call. A value of 000 specifies no wait between retries.

Note: In some countries, the PSTN requirements for the country set the minimum wait time between consecutive dial attempts to a telephone number. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product waits the amount of time you specify in the REDIALDLY parameter. If this time violates the PSTN limit for a country, the fax controller overrides the specified wait time and limits it to the wait time defined by that country.

ECM

Specifies whether the International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication (ITU-T) Error Correction Mode (ECM) is to be used. ECM allows the receiving fax node to inform the sending node of errors that are detected in the fax being transmitted. The sending node can then retransmit the data. If the receiving fax node does not support ECM, the fax is transmitted without ECM. This value is ignored for the 7852-400 modem; the modem does not support ECM.

***OFF:** ECM is set off.

***ON:** ECM is set on.

DIRCONTYP

Specifies the type of telephone switch to which this card or port is directly connected. This parameter will be ignored for Link Type (LINKTYPE) of *IMISDN.

***NONE:** The card or port is directly connected to a Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) switch. This default value allows you to use a previously defined data area to define the type of connection.

***PSTN:** The fax card or port is directly connected to a Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN). The fax card or port waits for a dial tone before dialing the telephone number.

***PBX:** The fax card or port is directly connected to a private branch exchange (PBX). The fax card or port dials the first dialing code of the prefix before it listens for a dial tone.

ADDFAXCRD

***PBX1–*PBX9:** The fax card or port is directly connected to a Private Branch Exchange (PBX). The PBX value you specify determines the number of dialing codes (digits) the fax card or port dials before listening for a dial tone. These dialing codes can be taken from the number you specify in the PREFIX parameter on the ADDFAXCRD command. They can also be taken from a combination of this prefix and the telephone number you specify in the TO parameter on the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command.

For example, assume that you specify 9 for the PREFIX parameter on the ADDFAXCRD command and 87654321 for the TO parameter on the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command. If you specify a value of *PBX1, the fax card or port dials 9 before listening for a dial tone. If you specify *PBX7, the fax card or port dials 9876543 before listening for a dial tone.

PREFIX

Specifies up to 10 digits as a prefix to precede every telephone number. If you specify *PBX for the DIRCONTYP parameter, the Integrated Fax Adapter dials the first digit of the prefix without waiting for a dial tone.

You can override the telephone prefix at dialing time by placing a dash (-) in the first position of the telephone number specified on either the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command.

***NONE:** No telephone number prefix exists. This default value allows you to use a previously defined data area to define the prefix.

prefix-telephone-number: Specifies the telephone number prefix for this card or port. The prefix can be up to ten characters in length and can contain any combination of dialing and control codes. For a list of the dialing and control codes, see “SNDFAX (Send Fax) Command” on page 198.

Note: If you specify a dialing or control code character, the prefix must be enclosed in apostrophes.

If the combined total number of characters specified for this parameter and on the SNDFAX or SBMFAX command exceed 32 characters, the call is still made for up to 40 dialing and control codes.

RTNNEGRSP

Specifies whether or not to discard a fax page if more than five percent of the data received is incorrect. If you choose not to discard the page, fax support keeps the page and reports the error.

According to the T.30 Fax Protocol, when the AS/400 fax controller detects a fax page that is below the quality limit, the AS/400 system can return a Return Negative (RTN) to a sending fax machine. The AS/400 system then requests a resend of the same page.

Not all fax machines adhere to the T.30 specification. If not, a fax machine may incorrectly send the next page. The RTNNEGRSP parameter prevents the loss of pages from such a fax machine.

Note: This parameter is ignored for the 7852-400 modem; the modem does not support RTNNEGRSP.

***NONE:** A fax page that contains incorrect data is discarded, and a successful status flag, S, is logged. This is the default value and follows the procedures in

previous releases. The fax controller sends a Return Negative response, and discards the page, assuming that the fax machine resends the same page. If the fax machine sends the next page, some pages from the fax may not be received.

***KEEP:** A fax page that contains incorrect data is included in a received fax, and an unsuccessful status flag, U, is logged. A FAXC201 error message with the minor error code 0021 FF23 23FF is also reported. The fax controller sends a Return Negative response, and keeps the fax page. The fax controller assumes that the sending fax machine sends the next page. If the fax machine resends the same page, the received fax contains multiple copies of that page.

Examples

See “Examples” on page 140 for the CRTFAXD examples used to create the fax descriptions that are referred to in the following examples.

Example 1

The command that follows adds the fax card or port FAX1 to the fax description FAXD01. The default names FAXD01 for the FAXD parameter and FAX1 for the FAXCRD parameter are used because these parameters are not specified on the command. The fax card or port has the following attributes:

- The card or port is used to send outbound faxes and receive inbound faxes (*BOTH is the default for the FAXTYPE parameter).
- Inbound faxes are placed in a member in the QAFFRCV database file located in the QUSRSYS library. (QUSRSYS/QAFFRCV is the default for the FAXFILE parameter.)
- A message is sent to the QFFRCVDQ data queue that is located in the QUSRSYS library when an inbound fax is received. (QUSRSYS/QFFRCVDQ is the default for the FAXRCVDQ parameter.)
- The fax card or port configuration is set to the following:
 - A blank TSI string
 - Tone dialing
 - Two retries are attempted if the initial call fails
 - A 60-second delay between retries
 - ECM off

ADDFAXCRD

Example 2

The command that follows adds the fax card FAX3 to the FAXD01 fax description. The fax card is located in slot 3 of the fax controller. The default fax description name FAXD01 is used; because the FAXD parameter is not specified. The fax card has the following attributes:

- The card can be used only to receive inbound faxes.
- Inbound faxes are placed in a member in the database file FAX3 located in the FAXLIB library.
- No data queue is used when inbound faxes are received.
- The fax card configuration is set to the following:
 - A blank TSI string
 - 10-pulse-per-second dialing

ADDFAXCRD

- DIALRTY ignored because FAXTYPE is *RECEIVE
- REDIALDLY ignored because FAXTYPE is *RECEIVE
- ECM on

```
ADDFAXCRD FAXCRD(FAX3) FAXTYPE(*RECEIVE) FAXFILE(FAXLIB/FAX3)
FAXRCVDQ(*NONE) DIAL(*PULSE10) ECM(*ON)
```

Example 3

The command that follows adds the fax card FAX7 to the FAX9 fax description. The fax card is located in slot 7 of the fax controller. The fax card has the following attributes:

- The card can be used only to send outbound faxes.
- No database file or data queue is associated with this card. Because this card is not used to receive inbound faxes, the file and queue are not needed. If specified, the file and queue are ignored.
- The fax card configuration is set to the following:
 - A TSI string of 277 555 9999
 - Tone dialing
 - If the initial call fails, the call is retried four times
 - A 120-second delay between retries
 - ECM off

```
ADDFAXCRD FAXD(FAX9) FAXCRD(FAX7) FAXTYPE(*SEND) FAXFILE(*NONE)
FAXRCVDQ(*NONE) TSI('277 555 9999') DIALRTY(4) REDIALDLY(120)
```

Example 4

You can add a new fax card to an active fax description. To do so, use the ENDFAXSPT command to end that fax description. For more information on the ENDFAXSPT command, see “ENDFAXSPT (End Fax Support) Command” on page 166. Use the ADDFAXCRD command to add the new fax card to that fax description. Once you successfully add the card, use the Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command to start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for that fax description. For more information on the STRFAXSPT command, see “STRFAXSPT (Start Fax Support) Command” on page 208.

For example:

The command that follows adds a new fax card to the FAXD01 fax description. The fax card is located in slot 4 of the fax controller. The card has the following attributes:

- The card can be used to send outbound faxes and receive inbound faxes.
- Inbound faxes are placed in a member in the QAFFRCV database file that is located in the QUSRSYS library.

The fax card configuration is set to the following:

- A TSI string of 277 555 6999
- Tone dialing
- If the initial call fails, the call is retried three times
- 90 second delay between retries

```
ENDFAXSPT FAXD(FAXD01) (to end fax support for FAXD01)
```

```
ADDFAXCRD FAXD(FAXD01) FAXCRD(FAX4) FAXTYPE(*BOTH)
```

TSI('277 555 6999') DIALRTY(3) REDIALTRY(090)
 (to add the new card)
 STRFAXSPT FAXD(FAXD01) (to start fax support for FAXD01)

ADDFAXDLE (Add Fax Distribution List Entry) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

▶▶—ADDFAXDLE—DST—(—*distribution-list*—)—DEST—(—*destination*—)—ID—(—*identifier*—)—▶▶
 ▶—ENTRY—(—^{*DEFAULT}
entry—)——▶▶

Purpose

The Add Fax Distribution List Entry (ADDFAXDLE) command adds an existing fax master list entry to a fax distribution list. A fax distribution list represents a subset of the entries in the fax master list. Master list entries contain information about individuals or businesses that you routinely send faxes to or receive from, such as a name and a telephone number. You must have a fax profile to use this command.

Parameters

DST

Specifies the name of the distribution list to be updated. The distribution list must already exist. This parameter is required.

distribution-list: Specifies the name of the fax distribution list to use.

DEST

Specifies the destination of the fax distribution list entry to be added to the distribution list. This parameter is required.

destination: Specifies the name of the destination. This name can be up to 30 characters in length.

ID Specifies the identifier of the master list entry. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

identifier: Specifies the identifier.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry value in the master list entry.

***DEFAULT**: The *DEFAULT entry for a destination is selected.

entry: A specific entry for a destination is selected. The entry value serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

Example

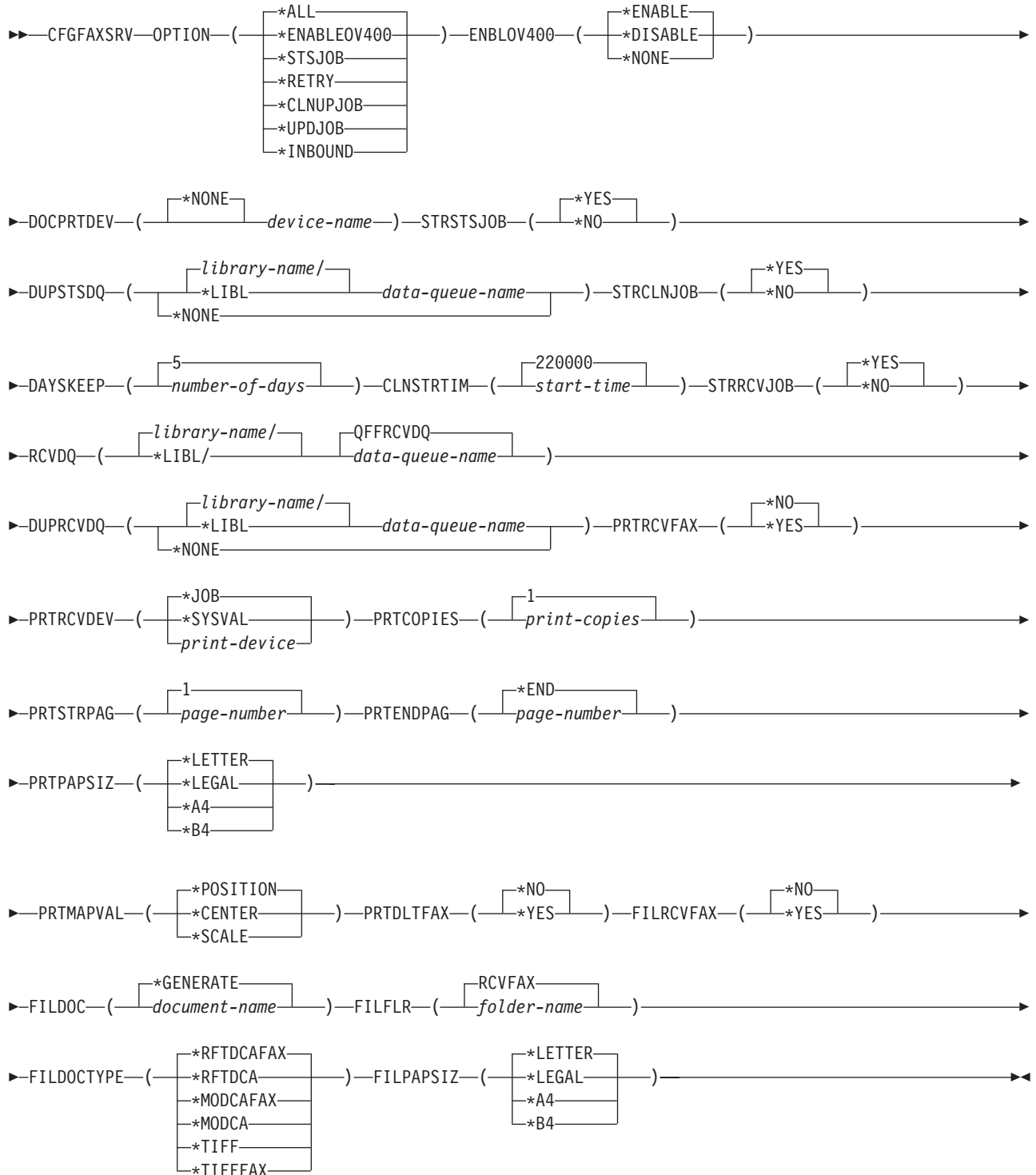
The command that follows adds the destination ABC OFFICE FURN to the SUPPLIERS distribution list.

ADDFAXDLE

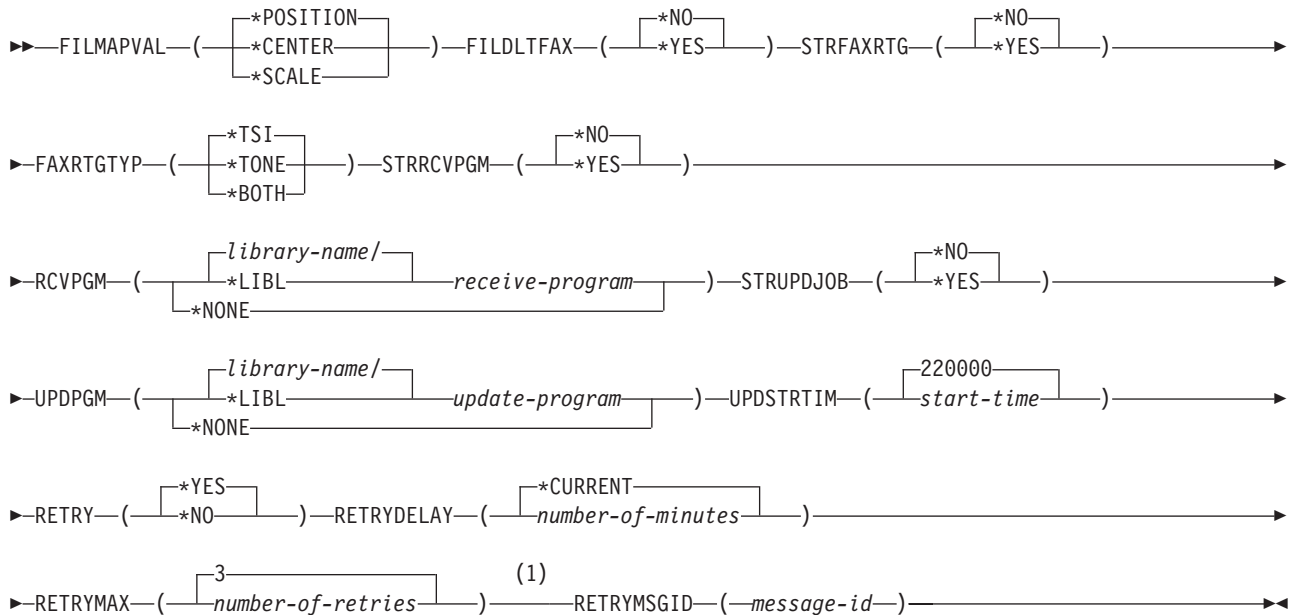
```
ADDFAXDLE DST(SUPPLIERS)
DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')
ID(100)
ENTRY('ORDER ENTRY')
```


CFGFAXSRV (Configure Fax Services) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



CFGFAXSRV



Notes:

1. A maximum of 50 is allowed.

Purpose

The Configure Fax Enhanced Services (CFGFAXSRV) command allows you to customize features of Enhanced Services on your AS/400 system. You must have a fax profile and be a fax administrator before using this command.

Parameters

OPTION

Specifies the option to be configured. If Enhanced Services is already started when you select this option, you must use the ENDFAXSPT command to end Enhanced Services. You must then use the STRFAXSPT command to restart Enhanced Services for the changes to take effect.

***ALL:** Allows you to configure all Enhanced Services options.

***ENABLEOV400:** Enables options that integrate the OfficeVision and Facsimile Support for AS/400 products. To change this value, you do not need to end and restart the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.

***STSJOB:** Starts an outbound status job and specifies a duplicate status data queue to be updated. The status job provides completion status information for outbound faxes. If a duplicate data queue is specified, this data queue contains mirrored status information.

***RETRY:** Allows a failed fax to be automatically resent. You can tailor the type of errors for which faxes should be retried, the number of times to retry, and the delay interval between retries.

***CLNUPJOB:** Allows the user to determine if the cleanup job ran. The cleanup job removes the log entries and spooled files for outbound faxes and log entries for received faxes after a specified retention period has expired.

***UPDJOB:** Allows the user to determine if a user-updated job is run, and specify the time it is to start. Specifies the program name and library for the program that is run when a fax is received. The user update program can be used to update other databases with fax information or update fax databases with user information.

***INBOUND:** Allows the user to determine how Enhanced Services handles inbound faxes. This option includes:

- Specific information about what data queue should receive notification of a received fax
- Whether or not the fax is automatically printed or filed as a document
- Whether or not routing should be performed and, if so, the type of routing to be performed
- Whether a user receive program should be started to handle received faxes
- Whether this program updates any fax databases

ENBLOV400

Specifies whether the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision products should be integrated. This option requires the OfficeVision product to be installed on the AS/400 system.

***ENABLE:** Integrates the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision products. This allows the user to send and view faxes from within the OfficeVision product. It also allows access to the Fax User menu through OfficeVision Administration.

***DISABLE:** Integration of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision products is to be removed.

***NONE:** If *ALL or *ENABLEOV400 is not specified for the OPTIONS parameter, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision products are not integrated and this parameter is not used.

DOCPRTDEV

Specifies the printer device name to use when printing a document to be faxed. The document printer device must be of type *IPDS and capable of Advanced Function Printing.

Note: The specified printer device should not be an active printer.

***NONE:** Specifies no printer device on this command. The device specified in the document option is to be used.

device-name: Specifies the name of the printer device to be used.

STRSTSJOB

Specifies whether the outbound fax status job is to be started.

***YES:** The status job is to be started.

***NO:** The status job is not to be started.

CFGFAXSRV

DUPSTSDQ

Specifies the name of the data queue and library that contains the data queue to receive duplicate status information.

***NONE:** No duplicate data queue is specified.

data-queue-name: Enter the name of the duplicate data queue.

library-name: Enter the name of the library that contains the duplicate data queue.

***LIBL:** Search the current user's library list is searched for the data queue.

STRCLNJOB

Specifies whether to start the cleanup job.

***YES:** The cleanup job is to be started.

***NO:** The cleanup job is not to be started.

DAYSKEEP

Specifies the number of days to keep inbound and outbound faxes and their associated logs.

5: Faxes and their associated logs are to be kept for 5 days.

number-of-days: Specifies a number of days between 1 and 999 to keep faxes and their associated logs.

CLNSTRTIM

Specifies at what time of day the cleanup job should begin.

220000: The cleanup procedure starts at 22:00:00 hours.

start-time: Specifies the time for the cleanup procedure to start, using the 24-hour format, HHMMSS. Separators are optional.

STRRCVJOB

Specifies whether the receive dispatcher job is to be started. This job starts other jobs to perform the configured receive functions, TSI routing, or a user-specified receive program for all inbound faxes.

***YES:** The received dispatcher job is to be started.

***NO:** The received dispatcher job is not to be started.

RCVDQ

Specifies the name of the data queue and the library that is to receive the status information.

QFFRCVDQ: The default data queue is to be used. This is the data queue used in the ADDFAXCRD command.

Note: When Enhanced Services is started, it monitors the default receive data queue, QFFRCVDQ, and information in that data queue is no longer available to other applications. If Enhanced Services is enabled on your system, use the Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV) command to

create a duplicate receive data queue. Your application must monitor the duplicate receive data queue to obtain the information.

data-queue-name: Specifies the name of the data queue to be used.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library that contains the data queue, or use *LIBL.

***LIBL**: The current user's library list is to be searched for the specified data queue.

DUPRCVDQ

Specifies the name of the data queue and the library that is to receive the duplicate information.

Note: When Enhanced Services is started, it monitors the default receive data queue, QFFRCVDQ, and information in that data queue is no longer available to other applications. If Enhanced Services is enabled on your system, use this parameter to create a duplicate receive data queue. Your application must monitor the duplicate receive data queue to obtain the routing codes.

***NONE**: No duplicate data queue is specified.

data-queue-name: Specifies the name of the data queue to contain the duplicate data.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library that contains the data queue, or use *LIBL.

***LIBL**: The current user's library list is to be searched for the specified data queue.

PRTRCVFAX

Specifies whether the received fax should be automatically printed.

***NO**: The fax is not to be printed.

***YES**: The fax is to be printed.

PRTRCVDEV

Specifies the name of the printer device to use when printing the received fax.

***JOB**: The default printer device specified by the user who ran the STRFAXSPT command is used.

***SYSVAL**: The printer device defined in the system value QPRTDEV is used.

print-device: Specifies the name of the printer device to be used.

PRTCOPIES

Specifies the number of copies to print.

1: One copy of the received fax is to be printed.

print-copies: Specifies the number of copies to be printed. You can use any number from 1 to 255.

CFGFAXSRV

PRTSTRPAG

Specifies the starting page number to be used when printing a fax.

1: The printing starts on page one.

page-number: Specifies the page number on which printing is to be started. You can specify any number from 1 to 99999.

PRTEENDPAG

Specifies the page on which to end when printing a fax.

*END: The entire fax is to be printed.

page-number: Specifies an ending page number from 1 to 99999.

PRTPAPSIZ

Specifies the paper size to use when formatting the fax. The paper size determines the size of the output area when the fax is printed or displayed. Due to the boundary areas required by printers, the output area is slightly smaller than the specified paper size.

*LETTER: The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (216 x 279 millimeters, or 8.50 x 11.00 inches).

*LEGAL: The fax is formatted for a legal-size output area (216 x 356 millimeters, or 8.50 x 14.00 inches).

*A4: The fax is formatted for an A4-size output area (210 x 297 millimeters, or 8.27 x 11.69 inches).

*B4: The fax is formatted for a B4-size output area (250 x 353 millimeters, or 9.84 x 13.90 inches).

PRTMAPVAL

Specifies how the fax image is placed in the output area.

*POSITION: The top left corner is placed in the top left corner of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed along the right and bottom edges.

*CENTER: The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed equally along all four edges.

*SCALE: The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. The entire fax is then scaled to fit within the boundaries of the output area.

PRTDLTFAX

Specifies whether or not the fax should be deleted from the database after it is printed.

*NO: The received fax is not to be deleted after it is printed.

*YES: Specifies to delete the fax after it has been printed.

FILRCVFAX

Specifies that a received fax is to be filed as a document in a folder.

***NO:** The received fax is not to be filed.

***YES:** Specifies to file the received fax as a document in a folder.

FILDOC

Specifies the document name the received fax is to be filed as.

***GENERATE:** The document name is automatically generated in the format: RCVnnnn, where nnnn is the generated number.

document-name: Specifies an alternate document name in the format: nnnnnnn.nnn.

FILFLR

Specifies the name of an existing folder in which the document is to be filed.

RCVFAX: The default folder, RCVFAX, is to be used.

folder-name: Specifies a folder name. The name can be 63 characters long, and the folder delimiter (/) can be used as a part of the name. The folder must already exist on the AS/400 system.

FILDOCTYPE

Specifies the document type to be used when filing the received fax. For more information on document types that are supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, see "Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products" on page 11.

***RFTDCAFAX:** The document type is set to *RFTDCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use the OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***RFTDCA:** The document type is set to *RFTDCA when filing the received fax.

***MODCAFAX:** The document type is set to *MODCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use the OfficeVision product to view or print the document.

***MODCA:** The document type is set to *MODCA when filing the received fax.

***TIFF:** The fax is filed in Class-F TIFF format. An extension of .TIF will be added to the document name by Fax Support. The document type in OfficeVision/400 is PCFILE. Filing the fax as *TIFF allows you to send the document to Lotus Domino users for their use and viewing. It also allows viewing by most web browsers.

***TIFFFAX:** The fax is filed in Class-F TIFF format. An extension of FAX will be added to the document name by Fax Support. The document type in OfficeVision/400 is PCFILE. Filing the fax in *TIFFFAX is recommended for the System Application Program (SAP) AL viewer and possibly additional specialized viewing software packages.

FILPAPSIZ

Specifies the paper size to use when formatting the fax. The paper size determines the size of the output area when the fax is printed or displayed. Due to printer boundary area requirements, the output area is slightly smaller than the specified paper size.

CFGFAXSRV

***LETTER:** The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (216 x 279 millimeters, or 8.50 x 11.00 inches).

***LEGAL:** The fax is formatted for a legal-size output area (216 x 356 millimeters, or 8.50 x 14.00 inches).

***A4:** The fax is formatted for an A4-size output area (210 x 297 millimeters, or 8.27 x 11.69 inches).

***B4:** The fax is formatted for a B4-size output area (250 x 353 millimeters, or 9.84 x 13.90 inches).

FILMAPVAL

Specifies how the fax image is placed in the output area.

***POSITION:** The top left corner is placed in the top left corner of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed along the right and bottom edges.

***CENTER:** The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed equally along all four edges.

***SCALE:** The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. The entire fax is scaled to fit within the boundaries of the output area.

FILDLTFAX

Specifies whether the fax is to be deleted after it is filed.

***NO:** The fax is not deleted after it has been filed.

***YES:** The received fax is deleted after it is filed.

STRFAXRTG

Specifies whether automatic routing should be done for the received faxes.

***NO:** Routing is not to be done.

***YES:** Routing is to be done.

FAXRTGTYP

Specifies the type of routing to be performed.

***TSI:** TSI routing is to be attempted.

***TONE:** *TONE routing is to be attempted.

***BOTH:** Both TSI and tone routing are to be attempted.

STRRCVPGM

Specifies whether a user application program is to be started to handle the received fax. "Receive Fax Data Area" on page 48 provides more information about user receive programs.

***NO:** A user application is not to be started.

***YES:** A user application is to be started.

RCVPGM

Specifies the name of the program to handle received faxes. "Receive Fax Data Area" on page 48 provides more information about user receive programs.

***NONE:** No update program is specified.

receive-program: Enter the name of the receive program.

library-name: Enter the name of the library that contains the receive program.

***LIBL:** The current user's library list is searched for the specified receive program.

STRUPDJOB

Specifies whether a user update job is to be started.

***NO:** The update job is not to be started.

***YES:** The update job is to be started.

UPDPGM

Specifies the program to perform updates on fax or user databases.

***NONE:** No update program is specified.

***LIBL:** Search the current user's library list for the specified update program.

update-program: Specifies the name of the update program.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library that contains the specified update program.

UPDSTRTIM

Specifies the time of day at which the update job should begin running.

220000: The update job starts at 22:00:00 hours.

start-time: Specifies the start time for the update job using the 24-hour format, HHMMSS. Separators are optional.

RETRY

Specifies whether or not a failed fax should automatically be resent. The RETRYMSGID parameter specifies the errors that create conditions in which a fax should be retried.

***YES:** The failed fax is to be resent.

***NO:** The failed fax is not to be resent.

RETRYDELAY

Specifies the number of minutes to wait before attempting to resend a failed fax. This parameter is used only if the value specified for the RETRY parameter is *YES.

***CURRENT:** The system attempts to resend the fax immediately.

number-of-minutes: Specifies the number of minutes to wait before attempting to resend a failed fax. The number of minutes can be any number from 1 to 60.

CFGFAXSRV

RETRYMAX

Specifies the number of times the system attempts to resend the fax before a final failure message is sent. This parameter is used only if the value specified for the parameter is *YES.

3: The system attempts to resend the fax three times after the retry delay interval is exceeded.

number-of-retries: Specifies the number of retries from 1 to 99.

RETRYMSGID

Specifies the Facsimile Support for AS/400 message identifiers that are to be monitored for automatic retry. You can specify up to 50 message identifiers. This parameter is valid only if the value specified for the RETRY parameter is *YES.

For a list of Facsimile Support for AS/400 messages, type the following on any command line:

```
WRKMSGF QFAXMSG
```

Example

You may choose to configure the resend message parameters, as follows:

```
CFGFAXSRV OPTION(*RETRY)
RETRY(*YES)
RETRYDELAY(10)
RETRYMAX(3)
RETRYMSGID(FAXC702)
```

When the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product detects a busy signal for the receiving fax, message FAXC702 is sent. This message is:

Call failure. Busy condition detected at telephone number &1.

The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product then waits 10 minutes from the time the message was received and then attempts to send the fax three more times. During the wait interval, the controller can process other faxes.

CHGDSTOWN (Change Fax Distribution List Owner) Command

Job: B,I PGM: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

```
▶▶ CHGDSTOWN—DST—(—distribution list name—)—OWNER—(—*SAMEuserID—)—▶▶
```

Purpose

The Change Fax Distribution List Owner (CHGDSTOWN) command allows you to change the owner of a fax distribution list. To use this command, you must have a fax profile and have *ALL authority to the distribution list. (If you are the owner of the distribution list, you automatically have *ALL authority.)

Parameters

DST

Specifies the name of the distribution list. This parameter is required.

distribution-list-name: Specifies the name of the distribution list.

OWNER

Specifies the new owner of the distribution list.

***SAME**: Specifies that the owner should remain the same.

userID: Specifies the user ID for the new owner of the distribution list.

Example

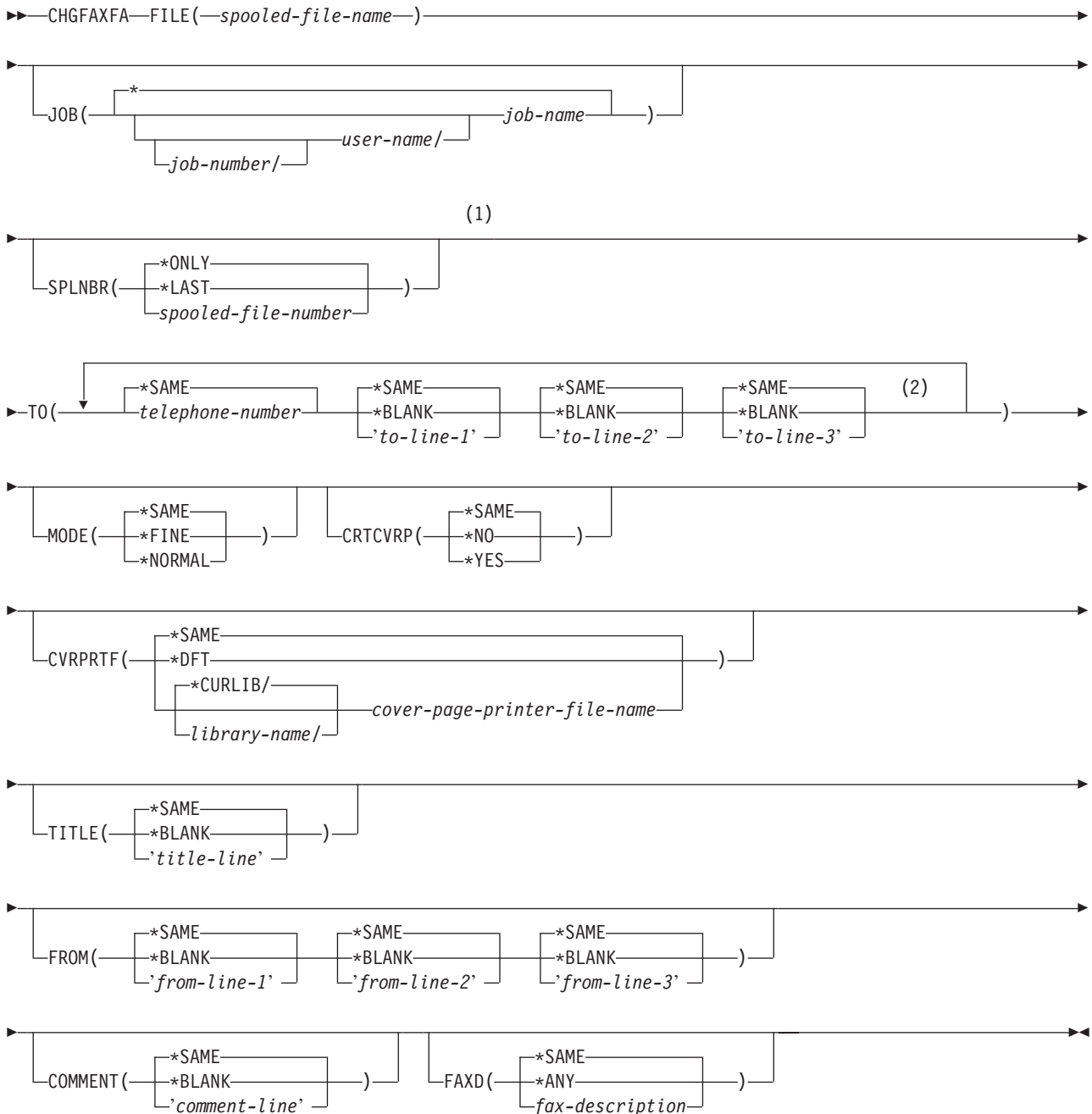
The command that follows specifies that the owner of the fax distribution list SUPPLIERS is changed to QSECOFR.

```
CHGDSTOWN DST(SUPPLIERS) OWNER(QSECOFR)
```

CHGFAXFA

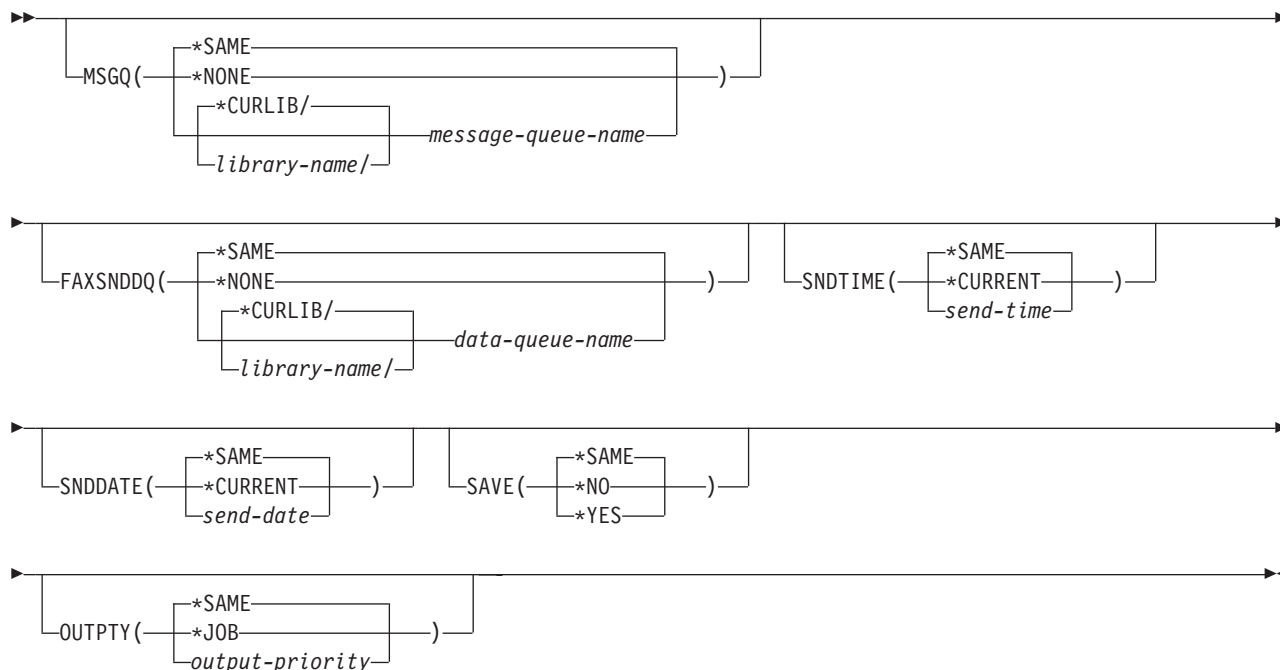
CHGFAXFA (Change Fax File Attributes) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.
2. A maximum of 25 repetitions positionally.



Purpose

The Change Fax File Attributes (CHGFAXFA) command changes the attributes of a spooled file that contains faxes. Each of the attributes for a fax spooled file available on the SNDFAX command can be changed using the CHGFAXFA command. In addition, the CHGFAXFA command can change the spooled file attributes SAVE and OUTPTY. The following attributes can be changed:

- Destination information.
- Mode used to send the fax.
- Whether a cover page is created.
- Cover page printer file name.
- Title line for the cover page.
- From lines for the cover page.
- Comment line for the cover page.
- Controller on which the fax is to be sent.
- Message queue for completion messages.
- Data queue for completion messages.
- Time after which the outbound fax is scheduled to be sent.
- Date on which the outbound fax is scheduled to be sent.
- Whether the spooled file is saved after the fax has been sent.
- Output priority.

When you press the F4 key to prompt for the CHGFAXFA command, the current attribute values for the specified fax spooled file are shown for each keyword on the command.

CHGFAXFA

Restriction

Only spooled files that contain faxes on the output queue QFFSNDFAF located in the QUSRSYS library can be specified on the CHGFAXFA command.

Required Parameter

FILE

Specifies the name of the spooled file that contains the attributes to be changed.

Optional Parameters

JOB

Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file containing the fax.

*****: The job that sent this CHGFAXFA command is the job that created the spooled file.

job-name: Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file. The job name is specified as either a simple or a qualified job name. If you specify a simple job name (no qualifiers are given), all of the jobs currently in the system are searched for that simple job name.

- If duplicate job names are found, all of the duplicate names are displayed in qualified form. You can then specify a fully qualified job name on the command.
- If duplicate job names are found and the job is a batch job, the command cannot be processed; and an error is written to the job log.

A qualified job name is formatted as *job-number/user-name/job-name*.

job-number: The unique 6-digit number that the system assigns to each job.

user-name: The name of the user profile under which the job was run. The user name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

job-name: The simple (unqualified) name of the job. The job name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

SPLNBR

Specifies the number of the spooled file that contains the fax attributes to be changed. You must specify a value other than *ONLY when the job creates more than one spooled file and the files have the same file name.

***ONLY**: Specifies that only one spooled file from the job has the specified file name; therefore, the spooled file number is not required.

***LAST**: Specifies that the spooled file with the highest number is the file that contains the fax attributes to be changed.

spooled-file-number: Specifies the number of the spooled file for the specified spooled file name that contains the fax attributes to be changed.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

TO

Specifies the destination information for each recipient of the fax. The destination information is the telephone number of the fax node to which the fax is sent and up to three optional lines of information to be placed on the cover page. A maximum of 25 destinations can be specified in this parameter.

***SAME:** Specifies that the *telephone-number* stays the same.

telephone-number: Specifies the telephone number of each destination fax node. One copy of the outbound fax, including the optional cover page, is sent to each telephone number. The telephone number can be up to 32 characters in length, and it can contain any combination of dialing and control codes. The telephone number must contain at least one dialing code. The dialing codes specify characters that make up the telephone number being dialed. The control codes represent pause durations that are inserted between the dialing codes. The dialing and control codes are:

Table 10. Dialing and Control Codes

Code	Description
0	Dialing code 0.
1	Dialing code 1.
2	Dialing code 2.
3	Dialing code 3.
4	Dialing code 4.
5	Dialing code 5.
6	Dialing code 6.
7	Dialing code 7.
8	Dialing code 8.
9	Dialing code 9.
A	Dialing code A. ¹
B	Dialing code B. ¹
C	Dialing code C. ¹
D	Dialing code D. ¹
#	Dialing code #.
*	Dialing code *. ²
-	Control code for a pause of 0.0 seconds. ²
=	Control code for a pause of 0.5 seconds. On the 7852-400 modem, this code creates a pause of 1 second. ²
+	Control code for a pause of 1.0 seconds. ²
/	Control code for a pause of 2.0 seconds. ²
?	Control code for a pause of 4.0 seconds. ²
%	Control code for a pause of 6.0 seconds. ²
&	Control code for a special duration pause. In some countries, this control code provides a pause of 0.0 seconds. In other countries, it provides the pause that is required after reaching the Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Facsimile Network (F-Net). This pause is required after dialing 161 or 162 to access F-Net. See your <i>FaxConcentrator Administrator's Guide</i> to determine how to set this control code in your country. The 7852-400 modem ignores this code. See notes ¹ and ² .

CHGFAXFA

Table 10. Dialing and Control Codes (continued)

Code	Description
:	<p>This control code forces the fax machine to wait for a dial tone before dialing. This code applies only to certain countries. In countries where this code is required, if you do not enter it as the first character in the telephone number, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product automatically inserts it. If this code appears after the first character in the telephone number, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product waits for the second dial tone before it continues to dial. See note ².</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The GammaLink fax adapter converts this code to a semicolon (;).• The 7852-400 modem ignores this code.
> or <	<p>Control code that forces a pause before dialing. This code applies only to certain countries. The length of the pause is country dependent. In countries where a pause before dialing is required, if the > or < code is not the first character in the telephone number, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product automatically inserts it. The 7852-400 modem ignores this code. See notes ¹ and ².</p>
1	<p>Only the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A and Integrated Fax Adapter support this code.</p>
2	<p>If you specify this character, you must enclose the telephone number in apostrophes.</p>

To Line 1: Specifies the contents of the first *to* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the first *to* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the first *to* line is blank.

'to-line-1': Specifies the contents of the first *to* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

To Line 2: Specifies the contents of the second *to* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the second *to* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the second *to* line is blank.

'to-line-2': Specifies the contents of the second *to* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

To Line 3: Specifies the contents of the third *to* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the third *to* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies the third *to* line is blank.

'to-line-3': Specifies the contents of the third *to* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

MODE

Specifies the mode used to send the fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the mode does not change.

***FINE:** Specifies that fine mode is used to send the fax. When fine mode is used, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per inch in the horizontal direction by 196 dots per inch in the vertical direction. Fine mode produces a better quality fax than normal mode.

***NORMAL:** Specifies that normal mode is used to send the fax. When normal mode is used, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per inch in the horizontal direction by 98 dots per inch in the vertical direction. Normal mode uses less transmission time than fine mode.

CRTCVRP

Specifies whether a cover page is to be created.

***SAME:** Specifies that the create cover page attribute of the fax spooled file does not change.

***NO:** Specifies that no cover page is created for the outbound fax being sent. Any cover page information (the to, title, from, and comment line values) specified on the command is ignored.

***YES:** Specifies that a cover page is created for the outbound fax being sent. The cover page is created using the cover page information (the to, title, from, and comment line values) specified on the command. The cover page is sent to each recipient in the TO parameter list.

CVRPRTF

Specifies the qualified name of a printer file used to create the cover page. If the specified library or printer file does not exist or the user that entered the SNDFAX command is not authorized to the specified printer file, the fax is sent using the default printer file.

***SAME:** Specifies that the cover page printer file name does not change.

***DFT:** Specifies that the default cover page printer file, QPFFCVP in the QFAX library, is used to create the cover page.

Possible library name values are:

***CURLIB:** The cover page printer file is located in the current library of the job that submitted the CHGFAXFA command.

library-name: The name of the library where the cover page printer file is located.

cover-page-printer-file-name: Specifies the name of the printer file used to create the cover page.

TITLE

Specifies the *title* line for the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** The *title* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the *title* line is blank.

'title-line': Specifies the contents of the *title* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

FROM

Specifies up to three *from* lines for the cover page for the outbound fax.

From Line 1: Specifies the contents of the first *from* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the first *from* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the first *from* line is blank.

'from-line-1': Specifies the contents of the first *from* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

CHGFAXFA

From Line 2: Specifies the contents of the second *from* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the second *from* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the second *from* line is blank.

'from-line-2': Specifies the contents of the second *from* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

From Line 3: Specifies the contents of the third *from* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the third *from* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the third *from* line is blank.

'from-line-3': Specifies the contents of the third *from* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

COMMENT

Specifies the *comment* line for the cover page for the outbound fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the *comment* line does not change.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the *comment* line is blank.

'comment-line': Specifies the contents of the *comment* line, up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

FAXD

Specifies the fax description name that the fax controller uses to send the fax.

***SAME:** Specifies that the fax description does not change.

***ANY:** Specifies that any fax controller is used to send the fax.

fax-description: Specifies the fax description name that the fax controller uses to send the fax.

- If the fax description does not exist, the command is not processed.
- When the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product processes the fax, a message is sent if the fax controller associated with this fax description is not active or all the cards or ports in the specified fax controller are configured to only receive inbound faxes. This message indicates that the SNDFAX command failed

MSGQ

Specifies the qualified name of a user-message queue where completion messages are sent for SNDFAX requests. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates this message queue if it does not exist when the first message is sent to the queue. Completion messages are sent to indicate the following conditions:

- If the specified spooled file cannot be converted to fax format, a single completion message is sent to this message queue indicating that the SNDFAX command failed.
- If the specified spooled file is successfully converted to fax format, a completion message is sent to this message queue for each telephone number specified in the TO parameter. This completion message indicates whether the telephone call was successful or unsuccessful. In addition, a SNDFAX command completion message is sent to this queue after the last call completion message.

In addition to the messages sent to this queue, completion messages are sent to the QFAXOPR message queue indicating the following unsuccessful SNDFAX conditions:

- If the specified spooled file cannot be converted to fax format, a single completion message is sent to the QFAXOPR message queue indicating that the SNDFAX command failed.
- If the specified spooled file is successfully converted to fax format, a completion message is sent to the QFAXOPR message queue for each telephone call that failed. In addition, an unsuccessful SNDFAX command completion message is sent to the QFAXOPR message queue after the last call completion message.

***SAME:** Specifies that the message queue attribute does not change.

***NONE:** Specifies that no completion messages are sent to a user message queue. Unsuccessful completion messages are still sent to the QFAXOPR message queue.

Possible library name values are:

***CURLIB:** The user message queue is located in the current library of the job submitting the CHGFAXFA command.

library-name: The name of the library where the user message queue is located.

message-queue-name: Specifies the name of the message queue to which the completion messages are sent.

FAXSNDDQ

Specifies the qualified name of a data queue where completion messages are sent for SNDFAX requests. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates this data queue if it does not exist when the first message is sent to the queue. Completion messages are sent to indicate the following conditions:

- If the specified spooled file cannot be converted to fax format, a single completion message is sent to this data queue. This message indicates that the SNDFAX command failed.
- If the specified spooled file is successfully converted to fax format, a completion message is sent to this data queue for each telephone number specified in the TO parameter. This completion message indicates whether the telephone call was successful or unsuccessful. In addition, a SNDFAX command completion message is sent to this queue after the last call completion message.

The format of the data queue messages is described in “Chapter 7. Send and Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format” on page 67.

***SAME:** Specifies that the data queue attribute does not change.

***NONE:** Specifies that no completion messages are sent to a data queue.

Possible library name values are:

***CURLIB:** The data queue is located in the current library of the job submitting the CHGFAXFA command.

library-name: The name of the library where the data queue is located.

CHGFAXFA

data-queue-name: Specifies the name of the data queue to which the completion messages are sent.

Note: If you use the send data queue, do not allow large numbers of messages to accumulate on the data queue. If messages accumulate on the queue and are removed from the queue, the queue size (storage allocated to the queue) is not reduced. After you process all of the accumulated messages from the queue, delete the queue. The next time the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product needs the queue, it is created at a smaller initial size.

SNDDTIME

Specifies the time when the outbound fax is scheduled to be sent.

***SAME:** Specifies that the send time does not change.

***CURRENT:** Specifies that the fax is scheduled to be sent at the current time (if an outbound fax line is available) or as soon as an outbound fax line becomes available (if all outbound fax lines are in use).

send-time: Specifies the time when the fax is scheduled to be sent. The outbound fax is sent as soon after the specified time as an outbound fax line becomes available. The send time is specified in 24-hour format and can be specified with or without a time separator:

- Without a time separator, specify a string of 4 or 6 digits (hhmm or hhmmss, where hh = hours, mm = minutes, and ss = seconds). Hours, minutes, and seconds must each be exactly 2 digits (use leading zeros if necessary).
- With a time separator, specify a string of 5 or 8 digits where the time separator specified for your job is used to separate the hours, minutes, and seconds. If you enter this command from the command line, the string must be enclosed in apostrophes. If a time separator other than the separator that you specified for your job is used, this command fails.

SNDDATE

Specifies the date when the outbound fax is scheduled to be sent. The fax is scheduled to be sent on this date at the time specified by the SNDDTIME parameter.

***SAME:** Specifies that the send date does not change.

***CURRENT:** Specifies that the fax is scheduled to be sent on the current day.

send-date: Specifies the date when the fax is scheduled to be sent. The date must be entered in the format specified by the QDATFMT system value. When the optional date separator is used, it must be the separator character specified by the system value QDATSEP. If the command is entered from the command line and the separator character is entered, the date must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

SAVE

Specifies whether the spooled file is saved after the fax has been sent.

***SAME:** Specifies that the save attribute does not change.

***NO:** Specifies that the spooled file is not saved after the fax has been sent.

***YES:** Specifies that after the fax has been sent, the spooled file is saved on the QFFSNDSAV output queue in the QUSRSYS library.

OUTPTY

Specifies the output priority that is assigned to the spooled file.

***SAME:** Specifies that the output priority attribute does not change.

***JOB:** Specifies to use the output priority of the job that created the spooled file.

output-priority: Specifies the assigned output priority. Valid values range from 1 (highest priority) to 9 (lowest priority).

Example

The command that follows specifies:

- To change the original fax attributes for the WEEKDATA spooled file produced by the job name 000416/PJK0126/JOBNAM1 on the QFFSNDFAX output queue located in the QUSRSYS library.
- No cover page is created.
- To direct any completion messages to message queue NEWMSGQ located in the MSGQLIB library.
- The remainder of the original fax attributes for this spooled file stay the same.

```
CHGFAXFA FILE(WEEKDATA) JOB(000416/PJK0126/JOBNAM1) SPLNBR(*ONLY)
CRTCVRP(*NO) MSGQ(MSGQLIB/NEWMSGQ)
```

CHGFAXSDA (Change Fax System Directory Attributes) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

▶▶—CHGFAXSDA—◀◀

Purpose

The Change Fax System Directory Attributes (CHGFAXSDA) command adds Facsimile Support for AS/400 user-defined fields to the system directory attributes. The AnyMail/400 Mail Server Framework product uses these fields. This command is required for the AnyMail/400 Mail Server Framework product to use fax support. You can run this command during the installation of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. You need run this command only once for each AS/400 system, unless the system directory attributes have been deleted. There are no parameters for this command.

Security administrator (*SECADM) or all object (*ALLOBJ) special authority is required to use this command.

If QSNADS or QSERVER subsystems are in use, the CHGFAXSDA command may fail (for example, due to contention). You can retry the command later, end the QSNADS or QSERVER subsystems, enter the CHGFAXSDA command again, and restart the subsystems, as follows:

1. ENDSBS SBS(QSNADS) *IMMED

CHGFAXSDA

2. ENDSBS SBS(QSERVER) *IMMED
3. ENDMSF
4. CHGFAXSDA
5. STRSBS SBS(QSNADS)
6. STRSBS SBS(QSERVER)
7. STRMSF

Note: The QSNADS and QSERVER subsystems may be in use. If you need to end these subsystems, you may want to choose a time of day when system activity is at a minimum.

CHGMLEOWN (Change Master List Entry Owner) Command

Job: B,I PGM: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

```
▶▶—CHGMLEOWN—DEST—(—destination—)—ID—(—identifier—)—ENTRY—(—*DEFAULT  
—entry-name—)—  
▶—OWNER—(—*SAME  
—userID—)—▶▶
```

Purpose

The Change Master List Entry Owner (CHGMLEOWN) command allows you to change the owner of a fax master list entry. Fax master list entries contain information about individuals or businesses you routinely send faxes to or receive faxes from, such as their name and fax telephone number. To use this command, you must have a fax profile and *ALL authority to the master list entry. (If you are the owner, you automatically have *ALL authority.)

Parameters

DEST

Specifies the destination of the fax master list entry. This parameter is required.

destination: Specifies the destination key.

ID Specifies the identifier of the fax master list entry. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

identifier: Specifies the identifier.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry of the fax master list entry. The entry serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

***DEFAULT:** Specifies the default entry.

entry-name: Specifies the entry to select.

OWNER

Specifies the new owner of the master list entry.

***SAME:** The master list entry owner remains unchanged.

userID: Specifies the user ID of the new master list entry owner.

Example

In the following example, the CHGMLEOWN command is being used to change the owner of the fax master list entry, ABC OFFICE FURN, to QSECOFR.

```
CHGMLEOWN DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')
IDEN(100)
ENTRY('ORDER ENTRY')
OWNER(QSECOFR)
```

CHKFAXSTS (Check Fax Status) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

```
▶▶—CHKFAXSTS—USER—(—*CURRENT—  

*ALL—  

   user-name—)——SNDDATE—(—*ALL—  

*CURRENT—)—————▶▶
```

```
▶—SNDTIME—(—*ALL—  

   send-time—)——DEST—(—*ALL—  

   destination-name—)——ID—(—*ALL—  

   identifiers—)—————▶▶
```

```
▶—ENTRY—(—*ALL—  

   entry—)——TEXT—(—*ALL—  

   entry—)——LOG—(—*ALL—  

*NONERROR—  

*ERROR—)——RESET—(—*NO—  

*YES—)—————▶▶
```

```
▶—CHGUSR—(—*NO—  

*YES—)—————▶▶
```

Purpose

The Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command allows you to check or reset the status of outbound faxes for a particular user. It also allows you to remove, resend, or view faxes.

You must have a fax profile to use this command. To work with another user's faxes, the following authority is required:

- To check status or view a fax, *USE authority is required.
- To reset the status or resend a fax, *CHANGE authority is required.
- To delete a fax and its associated log entries, *ALL authority is required.

Parameters

USER

Specifies which user's outbound fax information is displayed.

***CURRENT:** Status information is shown only for the current user.

***ALL:** Status information is shown for all users.

user-name: Specify the user ID to show fax status information for.

SNDDATE

Specify the send date for the outbound faxes whose status you want to check.

CHKFAXSTS

***ALL:** All dates are selected.

***CURRENT:** Only the current date is selected.

send-date: Only the status records that match the date value are selected. The date must be entered in the format that the QDATFMT system value specifies. When the optional date separator is used, it must be the separator character that the QDATSEP system value specifies. If the separator character is entered, it must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

SNDDTIME

Specify the send time for the outbound faxes whose status you want to check.

***ALL:** All times are selected.

send-time: Specify a time of day. Only the status records with time values greater than or equal to the send-time are selected. The time is specified in a 24-hour format, with or without separators.

DEST

Specifies the destination of the outbound faxes for which you want to display status. You can specify all or part of the destination name.

***ALL:** Display status for all destination entries.

destination-name: Specifies the name of the destination entry for which you want to display status. You can enter all or part of the destination name. The destinations that most closely match the name you enter are displayed.

ID Specifies the identifier of the outbound fax for which you want to display status.

***ALL:** All identifiers are selected.

identifiers: Enter all or part of the identifier. The identifiers that most closely match the identifier you specify are displayed.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry of the outbound fax for which you want to display status.

***ALL:** All entries are selected.

entry: Enter all or part of the entry. The entries that most closely match the entry you specify are displayed.

TEXT

Specifies all or part of the text description of the outbound fax for which you want to display status.

***ALL:** All descriptions are selected.

entry: Enter all or part of the description. The descriptions that most closely match the text you specify are displayed.

LOG

Specifies the type of log entries for the fax whose status you want to check.

***ALL:** All log entry types are selected.

***NONERROR:** Only the nonerror type of log entries is selected.

***ERROR:** Only the error type of log entries is selected.

RESET

Specifies whether a user can reset the status of the listed faxes.

***NO:** The status of the outbound faxes cannot be reset while using this command.

***YES:** The status of the outbound fax can be reset while using this command.

CHGUSR

Specifies whether an alternate user's fax status information can be displayed.

***NO:** Only the specified user's status information can be viewed when using this command.

***YES:** Alternate user status information can be viewed while using this command.

Example

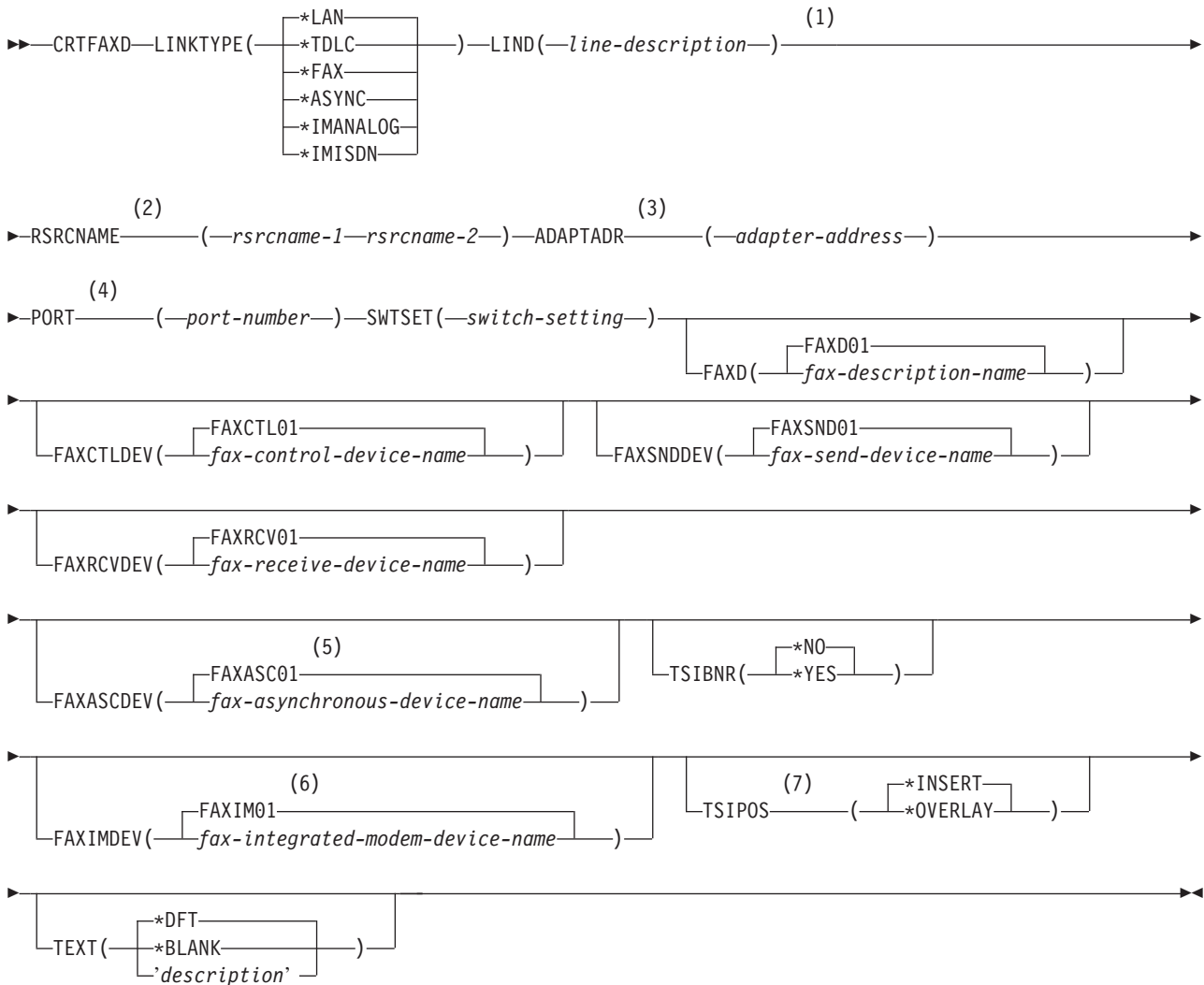
The following CHKFAXSTS command specifies that the current user receives only the send fax status records for the current date.

```
CHKFAXSTS USER(*CURRENT)  
SNDDATE(*CURRENT)
```

CRTFAXD

CRTFAXD (Create Fax Description) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.
2. This parameter is valid only if you specify *FAX, *ASYNC, *IMANALOG, or *IMISDN on the LINKTYPE parameter.
3. This parameter is valid only if you specify *LAN on the LINKTYPE parameter.
4. This parameter is valid only if you specify *TDLC on the LINKTYPE parameter.
5. This parameter is valid only if you specify *ASYNC for the LINKTYPE parameter.
6. This parameter is valid only if you specify *IMANALOG or *IMISDN for the LINKTYPE parameter.
7. This parameter is ignored if you specify *ASYNC on the LINKTYPE parameter and *YES on the TSIBNR parameter. The *OVERLAY parameter option is only valid for LINKTYPE parameter of *FAX, *IMANALOG, and *IMISDN. It is ignored for LINKTYPE parameters of *LAN, *TDLC, and *ASYNC.

Purpose

The Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command creates a fax description which consists of the following items:

- A member in the fax configuration database file.
- An APPC controller description for the fax controller.
- One device description used by the fax control function.
- Two device descriptions used by the send fax function.
- One device description used by the receive fax function.
- If the fax controller is attached by a TDLC line, entries that describe the three APPC devices are added to the APPN (Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking) remote configuration list. If the APPN remote configuration list does not exist, it is created.

Restrictions

You must have object operational, object management, and add data authority to the configuration file to create a fax description. You must also be authorized to create the controller and device descriptions. To use the CRTFAXD command, you must have *IOSYSCFG authority.

If the fax controller is attached by a TDLC line, you must be authorized to add entries to the APPN remote configuration list. You must create this configuration list if it does not exist.

Parameters

LINKTYPE

Specifies the type of line to which the fax controller is attached.

***LAN:** The fax controller is attached to an Ethernet or token-ring LAN line.

***TDLC:** The fax controller is attached to a TDLC line.

***FAX:** The Integrated Fax Adapter is attached to its own fax line.

***ASYNC:** The 7852-400 modem is attached to an asynchronous line.

***IMANALOG:** The analog PCI Integrated Remote Access hardware attached to an asynchronous line.

***IMISDN:** The PCI Integrated Remote Access ISDN Port is attached to a point-to-point protocol (PPP) line.

LIND

Specifies the name of the token-ring, Ethernet, twinaxial data link control (TDLC), or asynchronous line description to which the fax controller is attached. This line description must exist before the fax description is created. If you specify *FAX or *ASYNC for the LINKTYPE parameter, the LIND parameter must be unique and not already exist on the system.

RSRCNAME

Specifies two resource names that describe the two fax ports on the Integrated Fax Adapter, or one resource name for the 7852-400 modem or one resource name is required for the PCI Integrated Remote Access analog port. The resource names are uniquely defined by the system. To find the resource

CRTFAXD

names, specify *CMN for the hardware resource type on the Work with Hardware Resources (WRKHDRSC) command.

rsrname-1: The unique system-defined name of the resource for the first fax port of the Integrated Fax Adapter or the port of the 7852-400 modem.

rsrname-2: The unique system-defined name of the resource for the second fax port of the Integrated Fax Adapter.

ADPTADR

Specifies the adapter address of the token-ring or Ethernet card that is used in the fax controller. Valid entries are all the hexadecimal values from 000000000001 to FFFFFFFFFFFFFF. The adapter address is used when the APPC controller description is created for the fax controller.

To get the adapter address for your fax controller, first determine whether you are using a unique address or the default universally administered address. If you are using a unique adapter address, record the address on the fax description configuration work sheet. Instructions for assigning a unique LAN adapter address are provided in the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

To get the adapter address if you are using the universally administered address, see the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Note: For Ethernet connections, the adapter address format may need to be reversed. See the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide* or the *Communications Configuration* for more information on Ethernet address format considerations.

PORT

Specifies the twinaxial port number to which this fax controller is attached. Valid values range from 0 through 7. Use the Print Device Address (PRTDEVADR) command to determine the port numbers available on the system.

SWTSET

Specifies the switch setting of the twinaxial card in the fax controller. Valid values range from 0 through 6. Use the PRTDEVADR command to determine the switch settings available on the system.

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax description. This name is also used as the name of the controller description that is created for the fax controller.

FAXD01: The name of the fax description and the controller description is FAXD01.

fax-description-name: The name of the fax description and the controller description. This name can have a maximum length of eight characters.

FAXCTLDEV

Specifies the name of the device description to be used by the fax control function.

FAXCTL01: The name of the fax control device description is FAXCTL01.

fax-control-device-name: The name of the fax control device description. This name can have a maximum length of eight characters.

FAXSNDDEV

Specifies the root name for the two device descriptions used by the send fax function. The characters C (for send control device) and P (for send printer device) are concatenated to the end of this root name to form the two device description names.

FAXSND01: The name of the fax send device descriptions. These descriptions are named FAXSND01C and FAXSND01P.

fax-send-device-name: The root name of the send device descriptions that are created. This name can have a maximum length of eight characters.

FAXRCVDEV

Specifies the name of the device description used by the receive fax function.

FAXRCV01: The name of the fax receive device description is FAXRCV01.

fax-receive-device-name: The name of the fax receive device description. This name can have a maximum length of eight characters.

FAXASCDEV

Specifies the name of the device description for an asynchronous fax controller. The 7852-400 modem is an asynchronous fax controller.

FAXASC01: The name of the fax-asynchronous device description is FAXASC01.

fax-asynchronous-device-name: The name of the fax-asynchronous device description. This name can have a maximum length of eight characters.

FAXIMDEV

Specifies the name of the device description for a fax controller which controls a fax line on either a remote access analog adapter or a remote access ISDN adapter.

FAXIM01: The name of the remote access device description is FAXIM01.

integrated-modem-device-description: Specify the name of the fax integrated modem device description. This name can have a maximum length of 8 characters.

TSIBNR

Specifies whether a Transmitting Subscriber Identifier (TSI) banner is to be printed on each page of the fax. The appearance of the banner depends on the fax controller you are using. This parameter is valid only if your fax controller is a FaxConcentrator Adapter/A, GammaLink programmable fax adapter, or Integrated Fax Adapter. If you use the TSIBNR parameter, you must also specify *LAN, *TDLC, or *FAX for the LINKTYPE parameter.

- If you are using the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A, uppercase and lowercase characters entered for the TSI banner are printed in uppercase on your fax. However, these characters are not transmitted by the Fax Manager. The Fax Manager transmits only numeric information.
- If you are using a GammaLink Fax Adapter or Integrated Fax Adapter, the TSI banner information is printed exactly as you enter it on the TSI parameter of the ADDFAXCRD command.

CRTFAXD

The TSI banner includes the date, time, TSI information, Caller Subscriber Identifier (CSI) information, the page number, and the total number of pages in the fax. The date is printed in a format that is defined by the system value, QDATFMT. The date and time are printed with separators defined by the system values QDATSEP and QTIMSEP.

***NO:** No TSI banner is to be printed.

***YES:** A TSI banner is to be printed.

TSIPOS

Specifies the position of the TSI banner on the fax page. This parameter is valid only if you specified *YES for the TSIBNR parameter and *LAN, *TDLC, or *FAX for the LINKTYPE parameter.

***INSERT:** Adds a line at the top of the fax for the TSI banner. If the fax page is completely filled with data, the bottom line of information may be lost.

***OVERLAY:** Specifies that the TSI Banner is to be printed on the top line of the fax, overlaying any data that currently appears on that line. This option will only be applied on the Integrated Fax Adapter and PCI Based Integrated Remote Access adapters. If this option is specified for a PC fax controller, it will be ignored and *INSERT will be used.

TEXT

Specifies the brief text to describe the fax description. This text is used as the description for the member in the fax configuration database file.

***DFT:** The name of the default text description. This description is the phrase *Fax Description For* concatenated with the value that is specified in the FAXD parameter.

***BLANK:** No text description is specified.

'description': The text description, of up to 50 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

Examples

Example 1

The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAXD01. The default fax description name is used because the FAXD parameter is not specified. The fax controller being configured by this description has a link type of *LAN and is attached to the TRLINE token-ring line description. The token-ring card in that fax controller has an adapter address of 10005A10C746. Creating this fax description results in the following:

- A member that is named FAXD01 is added to the fax configuration database file.
- An APPC controller that is named FAXD01 is created.
- An APPC device description that is named FAXCTL01 is created for the fax control function.
- Two fax send devices that use FAXSND01 as the root for the name are created:
 - An APPC device description that is named FAXSND01C is created for the send fax control function.

- A printer device description that is named FAXSND01P is created for the send fax print function.
- An APPC device description named FAXRCV01 is created for the receive fax function.

```
CRTFAXD LINKTYPE(*LAN) LIND(TRLINE) ADPTADR(10005A10C746)
```

Example 2

The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAX9. The fax controller that is configured by this description has a link type of *LAN and is attached to the Ethernet line description that is named ETHLINE. The Ethernet card in that fax controller has an adapter address of 0A0000C2966C. Creating this fax description results in the following:

- A member that is named FAX9 is added to the fax configuration database file.
- An APPC controller that is named FAX9 is created.
- An APPC device description that is named FAX9C is created for the fax control function.
- Two fax send devices are using FAX9S as the root for the name being created:
 - An APPC device description that is named FAX9SC is created for the send fax control function.
 - A printer device description that is named FAX9SP is created for the send fax print function.
- An APPC device description named FAX9R is created for the receive fax function.

```
CRTFAXD LIND(ETHLINE) ADPTADR(500000436936) FAXD(FAX9)
FAXCTLDEV(FAX9C) FAXSNDDEV(FAX9S) FAXRCVDEV(FAX9R)
TEXT('Fax Description Number 9')
```

Note: A bit-reversal of each byte was performed for the adapter address that is specified in the previous example. For more information about bit-reversal, see the *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*.

Example 3

The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAXD01. The default fax description name is used because the FAXD parameter is not specified. The fax controller being configured by this description has a link type of *TDLC and is attached to the twinaxial line description that is named TWXLINE. Twinaxial port 2 is used on the AS/400 system and the switch setting of the twinaxial adapter in the fax controller is 6. Creating this fax description results in the following:

- A member that is named FAXD01 is added to the fax configuration database file.
- An APPC controller that is named FAXD01 is created.
- An APPC device description that is named FAXCTL01 is created for the fax control function.
- Two fax send devices are using FAXSND01 as the root for the name that is created:
 - An APPC device description that is named FAXSND01C is created for the send fax control function.
 - A printer device description that is named FAXSND01P is created for the send fax print function.
- An APPC device description named FAXRCV01 is created for the receive fax function.

CRTFAXD

- Entries that describe the three APPC devices are added to the APPN remote configuration list. If the APPN remote configuration list does not exist, it is created.

```
CRTFAXD LINKTYPE(*TDLC) LIND(TWXLINE) PORT(2) SWTSET(6)
```

Example 4

The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAXD01 for the Integrated Fax Adapter. The default fax description name is used because the FAXD parameter is not specified. The Integrated Fax Adapter being configured by this description has a link type of *FAX and is attached to the fax line description named LINFAX02. The resource names for each of the two fax ports on the Integrated Fax Adapter have been uniquely defined by the system as LIN021 and LIN022. Creating this fax description results in the following:

- A member that is named FAXD01 is added to the fax configuration database file.
- An APPC controller that is named FAXD01 is created.
- An APPC device description that is named FAXCTL01 is created for the fax control function.
- Two fax send devices that use FAXSND01 as the root for the name are created:
 - An APPC device description that is named FAXSND01C is created for the send fax control function.
 - A printer device description that is named FAXSND01P is created for the send fax print function.
- An APPC device description named FAXRCV01 is created for the receive fax function.

```
CRTFAXD LINKTYPE(*FAX) LIND(LINFAX02) RSRNAME(LIN021 LIN022)
```

Example 5

The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAXD01 for a 7852-400 modem. The default fax description name is used because the FAXD parameter is not specified. In this example, the modem has a link type of *ASYNC and is attached to the fax line description FAXLINE9. The resource name for this port is LIN021.

```
CRTFAXD LINKTYPE(*ASYNC) LIND(FAXLINE9) RSRNAME(LIN021)
```

Example 6

If you are already using the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product and want to have a TSI banner printed on your outbound faxes, do the following:

1. Use the ENDFAXSPT command to end the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.
2. Power off your external fax controller, if you have one.
3. Use one of the following commands to review your current configuration:
 - PRTFAXCFG
 - DSPPFM QUSRSYS/QAFFCFG FAXDnn
4. For each fax card you installed in your external fax controller, run the RMVFAXCRD command (or you can specify the *ALL option).
5. Use the DLTFAXD command to delete the existing fax controller description.

Notes:

- a. Since you must create a new fax description, you may want to run the DSPCTLD command before running the DLTFAXD command to obtain information about the controller.
 - b. If you are using a twinaxial controller, the line must be varied off before you can delete the fax description. If AUTO CONFIG is active on your AS/400 system, you may have to create an extra device when you vary the line on again.
6. Re-create the fax description, specifying *YES for the TSIBNR parameter on the CRTFAXD command.
 7. Use the ADDFAXCRD command to add each of your fax cards. Specify the information on the TSI parameter the way you want it to appear on the banner. See "ADDFAXCRD (Add Fax Card) Command" on page 100 for details.

Example 7

The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAXD05 for a PCI based integrated remote access analog adapter. In this example, the PCI based integrated remote access analog adapter has a link type of *IMANALOG and is attached to the fax line description FAXLINE5. The resource name for this port is CMN05. The TSI Banner is to be printed on each fax page and should be overlaid at the top of each page.

```
CRTFAXD LINKTYPE(*IMANALOG) LIND(FAXLINE5) RSRcname(CMN05)
      FAXD(FAXD05) FAXIMDEV(FAXIM05) TSIBNR(*YES) TSIPOS(*OVERLAY)
```

Example 8

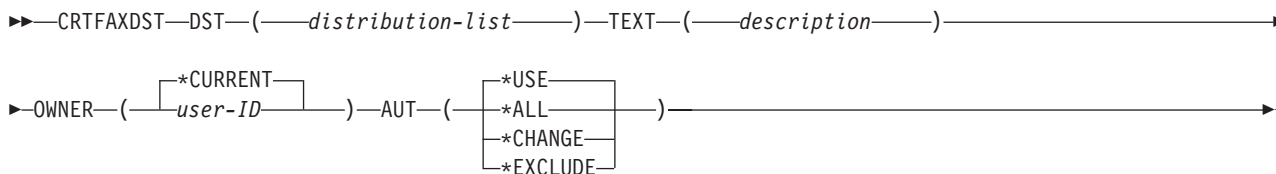
The command that follows creates a fax description that is named FAXD08 for a PCI based integrated remote access ISDN adapter. In this example, the PCI based integrated remote access ISDN adapter has a link type of *IMISDN and is attached to the fax line description FAXLIN8.

Note: Prior to issuing the CRTFAXD command, the user needs to have created a connection list, connection list entry (each connection list entry must have *LIND for the modem initialization command string (MDMINZCMD) parameter), a Network Interface Description (NWI), and a point-to-point protocol (PPP) line. See the ISDN on the AS/400 publication for more information and examples of how to create those items.

```
CRTFAXD LINKTYPE(*IMISDN) LIND(FAXLIN8) FAXD(FAXD08)
      TSIBNR(*YES) TSIPOS(*OVERLAY)
```

CRTFAXDST (Create Fax Distribution List) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



CRTFAXDST

Purpose

The Create Fax Distribution List (CRTFAXDST) command creates an empty fax distribution list. Use the ADDFAXDLE or WRKFAXDST commands to add entries to the list. You must have a fax profile to use this command.

Parameters

DST

Specifies the name for the fax distribution list. This parameter is required.

distribution-list: Specifies the name of the fax distribution list. The name can be up to 30 characters in length.

TEXT

Specifies the description for the fax distribution list.

description: Specifies the description. The text can be up to 30 characters in length.

OWNER

Specifies the owner of the distribution list. The owner automatically has *ALL authority to the list.

***CURRENT**: Specifies that the current user is to be the owner of the fax distribution list.

user-ID: Specifies the fax profile of the owner of the fax distribution list. You can enter up to 10 characters.

AUT

Specify the value for public authority to the distribution list. Public authority defines the authority of all users who are not specifically authorized to the distribution list.

***USE**: Specifies that the public has authority only to read the list entries and use the distribution list for submitting fax requests.

***ALL**: Specifies that the public has authority to the list. This authority allows users to read, add, update, and delete list entries, as well as use or delete the list.

***CHANGE**: Specifies that the public has authority to read, add, update, and delete list entries, as well as use the distribution list.

***EXCLUDE**: Public is excluded, or cannot use the list. A user must have specific authority to use the list. Specific authority can be granted by the owner of the fax distribution list.

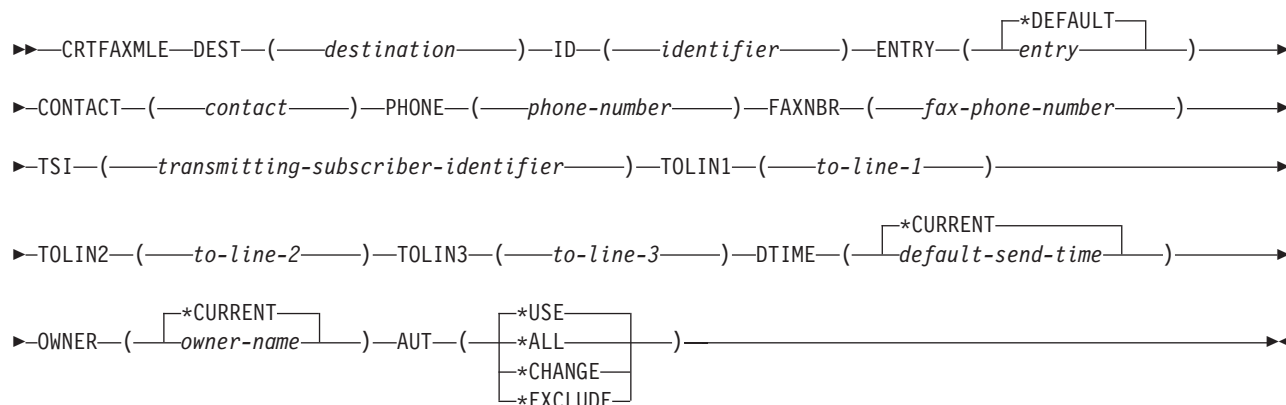
Example

The following CRTFAXDST command creates a distribution list with a public authority of *CHANGE.

```
CRTFAXDST DST('SUPPLIERS')
          TEXT('SUPPLIER DISTRIBUTION LIST')
          OWNER(*CURRENT)
          AUT(*CHANGE)
```

CRTFAXMLE (Create Fax Master List Entry) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec



Purpose

The Create Fax Master List Entry (CRTFAXMLE) command creates a new entry in the fax master list. To create default (*DEFAULT) entries, no security authorization is required. To create nondefault entries, you must have *CHANGE or *ALL authority to the fax master list. You must have a fax profile to use this command.

Parameters

DEST

Specifies the destination name for the new fax master list entry. It can be up to 30 characters in length. This parameter is required.

destination: Specifies the destination name.

ID Specifies the identifier for the new fax master list entry. The identifier serves as a qualifier for the master list entries that have the same destination.

identifier: Specifies the identifier.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry for the new fax master list entry. The entry serves as a qualifier for fax master list entries that have the same destination. One default (*DEFAULT) entry is required for each destination. One or more nondefault entries are optional.

***DEFAULT:** The default entry for the new fax master list entry.

entry: A specific entry for a destination is selected. The entry can be up to 30 characters in length.

CONTACT

Specifies the contact name. Specify up to 30 characters for the contact name.

contact: Specifies the contact name.

PHONE

Specifies the contact telephone number. This number can be in any format.

CRTFAXMLE

phone-number: Specifies the telephone number for the contact. The telephone number can be up to 32 characters and contain any combination of dialing and control codes. See the description of the TO parameter for the SNDFAX command for a list of valid codes.

FAXNBR

Specifies the fax telephone number. This parameter is required.

fax-phone-number: Specifies the fax telephone number.

TSI

Specifies the transmitting subscriber identifier (TSI).

transmitting-subscriber-identifier: Specifies the TSI. The TSI is typically the telephone number for a fax machine. However, it can also be a company name or some other meaningful text string up to 20 characters in length. The TSI in the master list entry is used for routing inbound faxes.

TOLIN1

Specifies the information for the TO line on the cover page.

to-line-1: Specifies the contents of the first line. The text can be up to 40 characters in length.

TOLIN2

Specifies the second line for the TO information on the cover page.

to-line-2: Specifies the contents of the second line. The text can be up to 40 characters in length.

TOLIN3

Specifies the third line for the TO information on the cover page.

to-line-3: Specifies the contents of the third line. The text can be up to 40 characters in length.

DTIME

Specifies the time to send when creating the fax.

***CURRENT:** When creating a fax to send to this destination, specify the current time. The fax is to be sent immediately.

default-send-time: When creating a fax to send, use the default send time specified.

OWNER

Specifies the owner of the fax master list entry.

***CURRENT:** Specifies that the current user is to be the owner of the fax master list entry.

owner-name: Enter the AS/400 user profile for the owner of the fax master list entry.

AUT

Specifies the level of public authority for the fax master list entry. The value you specify for the public authority defines the level of authority for all users who are not granted specific authority to the entry.

***USE:** Allows the public to read the entry, or use it to submit a fax request.

CRTFAXMLE

***ALL:** Allows the public to perform all operations. Any user can change or delete the entry, specify security for the entry, change ownership of the entry, or use it to submit a fax request.

***CHANGE:** Allows the public to read, use, and update the entry.

***EXCLUDE:** The public cannot access the entry. If a user needs access to the entry, that user must be granted specific authority to it.

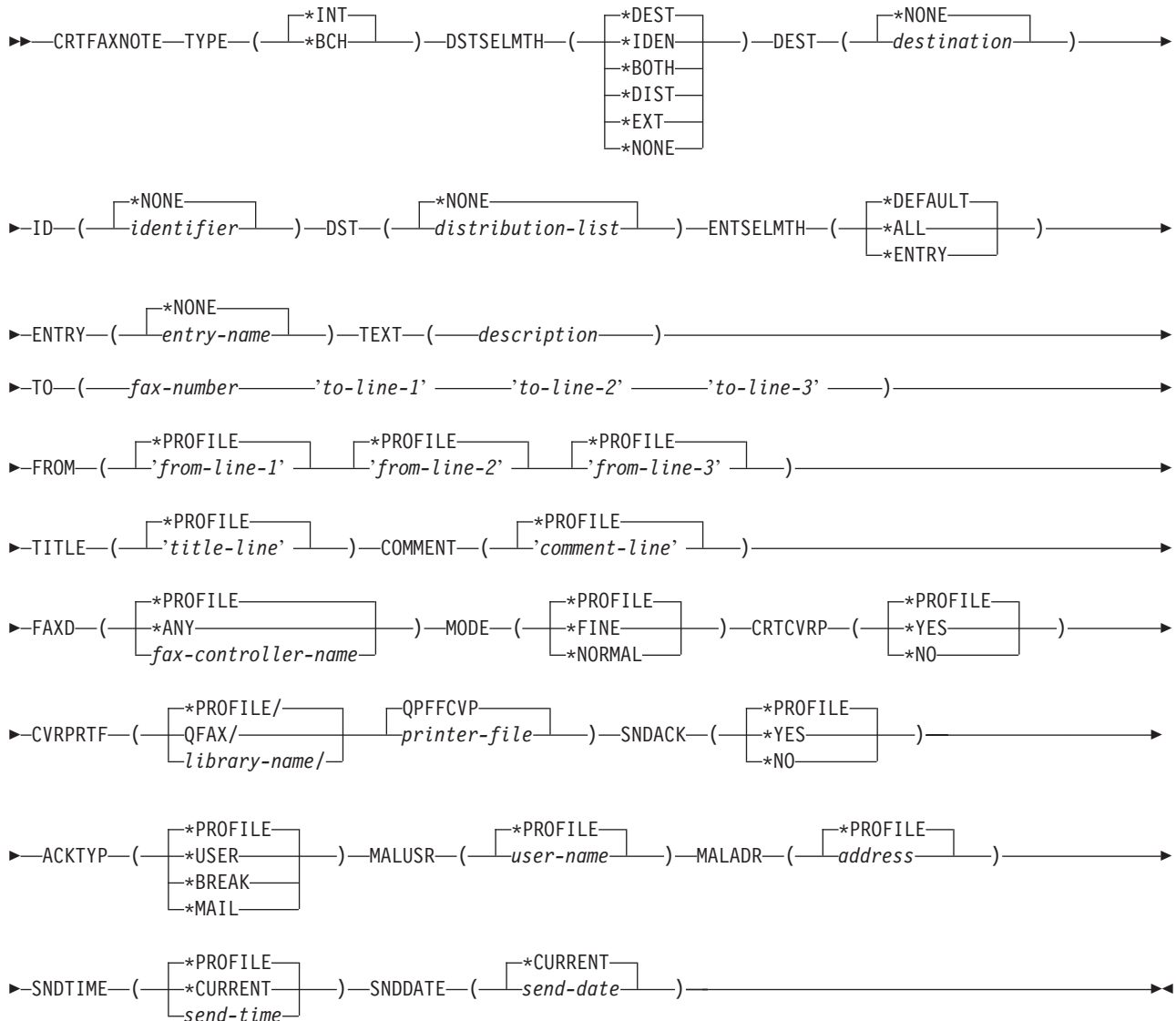
Example

The following CRTFAXMLE command creates a new entry in the fax master list. It allows the public to read and view the entry by setting the public authority to *USE.

```
CRTFAXMLE DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')
  ID(100)
  ENTRY('ORDER ENTRY')
  FAXNBR(912772224444)
  TOLIN1('ORDER PROCESSING')
  OWNER(*CURRENT)
  AUT(*USE)
```

CRTFAXNOTE (Create Fax Note) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec



Purpose

The Create Fax Note (CRTFAXNOTE) command allows the user to create a note to be faxed. The fax note can be up to 10 pages long with 60 lines per page. Each line can be 75 characters wide. The note is not saved on the system; it is deleted when this command has been processed.

You must have a fax profile to use this command.

Parameters

TYPE

Specifies whether the fax request is controlled interactively or whether it is submitted to batch without presenting an interface.

***INT:** The fax request is controlled by the submit fax interface presented to the user.

***BCH:** The fax request is controlled by the parameters on the CRTFAXNOTE command. The submit fax interface is not presented to the user.

DSTSELMTH

Specifies how a fax destination is selected.

***DEST:** The contents of the DEST parameter are used to select the fax destination.

***IDEN:** The contents of the IDEN parameter are used to select the fax destination.

***BOTH:** The contents of the DEST and IDEN parameters are used to select the fax destination.

***DIST:** All of the distribution list entries that are associated with the distribution list that you specified in the DST parameter are selected.

***EXT:** External data is used to complete the fax destination information instead of retrieving the information from the Enhanced Services databases. This external information must be specified on the SBMFAX command. When external data is entered for the destination, the DEST and ID parameters are optional.

***NONE:** No destination is selected for the fax request.

DEST

Specifies the name of the fax destination for this fax request.

***NONE:** No specific destination has been entered. When you use the `CHKFAXSTS` command, the destination name appears as `*NONE`.

destination: Specifies the name of the destination for this fax request. A maximum of 30 characters can be specified for this parameter.

ID Specifies the identifier of the destination for this fax request.

***NONE:** No specific identifier has been entered. When you use the `CHKFAXSTS` command, the identifier appears as `*NONE`.

identifier: Specifies the identifier of this destination for this fax request. A maximum of 30 characters can be specified for this parameter.

DST

Specifies the distribution list to use.

***NONE:** No distribution list is used to select fax destinations.

CRTFAXNOTE

distribution-list: Specifies the distribution list name to use when selecting fax destinations. The distribution list name can be up to 30 characters in length.

ENTSELMTH

Specifies how to select a destination entry in the fax master list.

***DEFAULT:** The default entry for a destination is selected.

***ALL:** All entries for a destination are selected.

***ENTRY:** A specific entry for a destination is selected.

ENTRY

Identifies a specific entry name. It must be a nondefault entry in the fax master list. The entry value serves as a qualifier for fax master list entries that have the same destination.

This parameter is valid only if you chose *ENTRY on the ENTSELMTH parameter, in which case it is required.

***NONE:** No specific entry name is specified.

entry-name: Specifies the name of the destination entry.

TEXT

Specifies the description for this fax request. It can be up to 30 characters in length.

description: Specifies a description for this fax request. A maximum of 30 characters can be specified for this parameter.

TO

Specifies the receiver information that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

fax-number: Specifies up to 32 characters for the fax telephone number.

'to-line-1': Specifies up to 40 characters for the first *to* line on the cover page.

'to-line-2': Specifies up to 40 characters for the second *to* line on the cover page.

'to-line-3': Specifies up to 40 characters for the third *to* line on the cover page.

FROM

Specifies the sender information that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the first *from* line on the cover page.

'from-line-1': Specifies up to 40 characters for the first *from* line on the cover page.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the second *from* line on the cover page.

'from-line-2': Specifies up to 40 characters for the second *from* line on the cover page.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the third *from* line on the cover page.

'from-line-3': Specifies up to 40 characters for the third *from* line on the cover page.

TITLE

Specifies the *title* line that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the *title* line on the cover page.

'title-line': Specifies up to 40 characters for the *title* line on the cover page.

COMMENT

Specifies the *comment* line that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the *comment* line on the cover page.

'comment-line': Specifies up to 40 characters for the *comment* line on the cover page.

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax description to use when sending a fax.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the fax description name.

***ANY:** Specifies that the first available fax controller is used when sending a fax.

fax-controller-name: Specifies the name of an existing fax controller to use when sending a fax.

MODE

Specifies the transmission mode to be used to send the fax.

***PROFILE:** The mode that is specified in the fax profile is used.

***FINE:** FINE mode is used to send the fax. When FINE mode is used, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per inch in the horizontal direction by 196 dots per inch in the vertical direction. The FINE mode produces a better quality fax than the NORMAL mode.

***NORMAL:** NORMAL mode is used to send the fax. When NORMAL mode is used, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per inch in the horizontal direction by 98 dots per inch in the vertical direction. The NORMAL mode uses less transmission time than the FINE mode.

CRTCVRP

Specifies whether the cover page is to be created.

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for the cover page.

CRTFAXNOTE

***YES:** A cover page is created for this fax request.

***NO:** A cover page is not created for this fax request. Any cover page information that you specify on this command is ignored.

CVRPRTF

Specifies the qualified name of a printer file to be used to create the cover page. If the specified library or printer file does not exist or the user that entered the SNDFAX command is not authorized to use the printer file, the cover page created is sent using the default printer file.

The possible values for the library are:

***PROFILE:** Use the information from the fax profile for name of the printer file.

QFAX: The cover page printer file resides in the QFAX library.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library where the cover page printer file resides.

The possible values for the printer file are:

***QPFFCVP:** The QPFFCVP printer file is used when sending the fax.

printer-file: Specifies the name of the printer file to use when sending the fax.

SNACK

Specifies whether an acknowledgment should be sent to notify the user that the fax transmission has completed.

***PROFILE** The information contained in the fax profile is used.

***YES:** Acknowledgment is sent to the requesting user with the following details:

- Destination
- Identifier
- Destination entry
- Fax number that was used
- Description of the fax
- Spooled file name
- Job name
- Job number
- Spooled file number

***NO:** Acknowledgment is not sent to the requesting user.

ACKTYP

Specifies the type of acknowledgment message to be sent.

***PROFILE:** The information that is contained in the fax profile is to be used.

***USER:** A message is sent to the user when the fax transmission is completed.

***BREAK:** A break message is sent to the user when the fax transmission is completed.

***MAIL:** An OfficeVision mail item is sent to the user when the fax transmission is ended.

MALUSR

Specifies the user to receive the mail item acknowledgment.

***PROFILE:** The information that is contained in the fax profile is to be used.

user-name: Enter the name of a valid AS/400 profile to receive the mail notification.

MALADR

Specifies the address that is associated with the user ID of the user to receive the mail item acknowledgment.

***PROFILE:** The information that is contained in the fax profile is to be used.

address: Enter the address of the user to receive the mail notification.

SNDDATE

Specifies the date when the fax is scheduled to be sent.

***PROFILE:** The information in the fax profile is to be used.

***CURRENT:** The fax is scheduled to be sent at the current time, if an outbound fax line is available, or as soon as an outbound fax line becomes available, if all outbound fax lines are in use.

send-time: Specifies the time when the fax should be sent. The fax is sent as soon after the specified time as an outbound fax line becomes available. The send time is specified in a 24-hour format, with or without time separators.

SNDDATE

Specifies the date when the fax is scheduled to be sent.

***CURRENT:** The fax is scheduled to be sent on the current day.

send-date: Specifies the date when the fax is scheduled to be sent. The date must be entered in the format that is specified by the QDATFMT system value. When the optional date separator is used, it must be the separator character that is specified by the QDATSEP system value. If the separator character is entered, it must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

Example

An example of the CRTFAXNOTE command follows. This command selects the fax distribution list, SUPPLIERS, as the list of destinations that the notes are to be sent when a user presses F10 (SUBMIT) on the Create Fax Note display to submit a fax request.

```
CRTFAXNOTE TYPE(*INT)
DSTSELMTH(*DIST)
DST('SUPPLIERS')
TEXT('ORDER REQUEST')
```

CRTFAXPRF (Create Fax Profile) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

▶▶ CRTFAXPRF REPLACE ((*NO *YES)) ▶▶

Purpose

The Create Fax Profile (CRTFAXPRF) command creates one or more fax profiles that are based on AS/400 user profiles. The AS/400 user profile description is used for the fax profile description. It is also used as the default for the first *from* line on cover pages.

Only a fax administrator can create or change another user's fax profile. If you are not a fax administrator, you can use this command only to create or replace your own fax profile.

If you are a fax administrator:

- This command creates or replaces a fax profile for every AS/400 user profile to which you are authorized.
- If you have *QSECOFR authority, this command creates or replaces a fax profile for every AS/400 user profile on the system.

Parameters

REPLACE

If a fax profile already exists, this parameter specifies whether the description and first *from* line in that profile should be replaced by the description in the AS/400 user profile. This parameter does not apply to newly created fax profiles.

***NO:** If a fax profile exists, the fax profile description and the first *from* line are not updated.

***YES:** If a fax profile exists, the fax profile description and the first *from* line specified in the fax profile are replaced by the description in the AS/400 user profile.

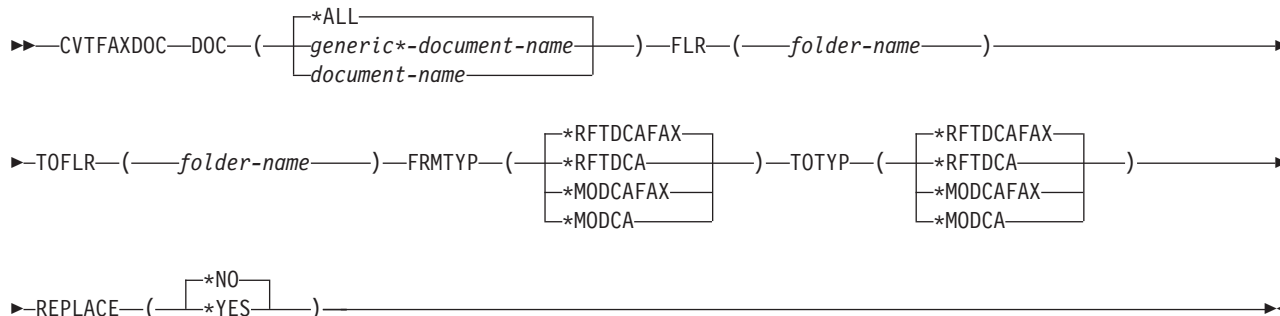
Example

The command that follows creates a fax profile for every AS/400 user profile on the AS/400 system. The fax profile description and the first *from* line are not to be changed.

```
CRTFAXPRF REPLACE(*NO)
```

CVTFAXDOC (Convert Fax Document) Command

Job: B,I PGM: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Purpose

The Convert Fax Document (CVTFAXDOC) command allows you to convert a document from one type to another. The document types supported are *RFTDCA, *MODCA, *RFTDCAFAX, and *MODCAFAX.

Notes:

1. Only images are converted. Other information, such as text, bar codes, and graphics, do not exist in the converted document.
2. This command requires the OfficeVision product to be installed on your AS/400 system.

Parameters

DOC

Specifies the name of the document to be converted. This parameter is required.

The possible values are:

***ALL:** Convert all documents in a folder.

generic-document-name:* Specifies the generic name of the document to be converted. The generic name can be specified as a string of one or more characters followed by an asterisk.

document-name: Specifies the name of the document to be converted, using the format **nnnnnnnn.nnn**.

FLR

Specifies the folder that contains the documents to be converted. This parameter is required.

folder-name: Specifies the folder name. The folder name can be a maximum of 63 characters and the folder delimiter character (/) can be used as a part of the folder name.

TOFLR

Specifies the name of the folder to contain the converted documents. This parameter is required.

CVTFAXDOC

folder-name: Specifies the name of the folder to contain the converted document. The folder name can be a maximum of 63 characters and the folder delimiter character (/) can be used as a part of the folder name. This folder name cannot be the same as the name specified in the FLR parameter.

FRMTYP

Specifies the type of document to be converted. This parameter is required.

For more information on document types that are supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, see “Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products” on page 11.

***RFTDCAFAX**: The document type is set to *RFTDCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use the OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***RFTDCA**: The document type is set to *RFTDCA when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use the OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***MODCAFAX**: The document type is set to *MODCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use the OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***MODCA**: The document type is set to *MODCA when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use the OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

TOTYP

Specifies the new document type. This parameter is required.

For more information on document types that are supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, see “Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products” on page 11.

***RFTDCAFAX**: The document type is set to *RFTDCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***RFTDCA**: The document type is set to *RFTDCA when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***MODCAFAX**: The document type is set to *MODCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***MODCA**: The document type is set to *MODCA when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

REPLACE

If the document already exists in the target folder, specify whether the document should be replaced.

***NO**: The document is not to be replaced.

***YES:** If the document already exists in the folder, it is replaced by the newly converted document.

Example

The following command converts all RFT:DCA type documents in folder JONES to MO:DCAFAX type documents. It then places them in another folder, JONES2. Any existing documents in the JONES2 folder with the same names as those in the JONES folder are replaced.

```
CVTFAXDOC FLR(JONES) TOFLR(JONES2)
FRMTYP(*RFTDCA) TOTYP(*MODCAFAX)
REPLACE(*YES)
```

DLTFAX (Delete Fax) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

```
DLTFAX FAXFILE( [ *LIBL/
                  [ *CURLIB/
                  [ library-name/ ]
                  file-name ) FAXMBR( [ *ALL
                                       [ member-name
                                       [ generic*-member-name ]
                                       ) (1)
```

Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Delete Fax (DLTFAX) command deletes one or more inbound faxes from a fax database file.

Restrictions

To delete a fax, you must have object existence authority to the database file that contains the fax.

Parameters

FAXFILE

Specifies the qualified name of the database file that contains the fax to be deleted.

Possible library name values are:

***LIBL:** Specifies that library list is used to locate the database file that contains the fax to be deleted.

***CURLIB:** Specifies that the current library is used to locate the database file that contains the fax to be deleted.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library where the database file that contains the fax is located.

file-name: Specifies the name of the database file that contains the fax being deleted.

DLTFAX

FAXMBR

Specifies the name of the database file member that contains the fax to be deleted.

***ALL:** Specifies to delete all faxes from the specified database file.

member-name: Specifies the name of the database file member that contains the fax to be deleted.

generic-member-name:* Specifies the generic name of the faxes to be deleted. A generic name is a character string that contains one or more characters that are followed by an asterisk (*), for example, F212*. If you specify a generic name, then all fax members with names that begin with the generic name, and for which you have authority, are deleted.

Example

The following command deletes the fax in database file member F205806434, in the QAFFRCV database file in the QUSRSYS library:

```
DLTFAX FAXFILE(QUSRSYS/QAFFRCV) FAXMBR(F205806434)
```

DLTFAXD (Delete Fax Description) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

►►—DLTFAXD—FAXD(⁽¹⁾—*fax-description-name*—)—————►►

Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Delete Fax Description (DLTFAXD) command deletes a fax description. In addition to the fax description, the following are deleted:

- The controller description for this fax description.
- The fax control device description for this fax description.
- The two send fax device descriptions for this fax description.
- The receive fax device description for this fax description.
- If the fax controller is attached by a TDLC line, entries that describe the three APPC devices are removed from the APPN remote configuration list. If all entries are removed from the APPN remote configuration list, the list is deleted.
- If the fax controller is attached by an asynchronous line, an asynchronous device description for this fax description.

Restrictions

This command cannot be run if the active Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is using the specified fax description. You must have object operational, object existence, and read data authority to the configuration file to delete a fax description. You must also be authorized to delete the controller and device descriptions.

If the fax controller is attached by a TDLC line, the following additional restrictions apply:

- The line description to which the APPC controller description is connected must be varied off. If this line description is not varied off, the controller description cannot be deleted.
- You must be authorized to remove entries from, and to delete, the APPN remote configuration list.

Parameter

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax description that is to be deleted.

Examples

See “Examples” on page 140 for the CRTFAXD examples used to create the fax descriptions that are being deleted in the following examples. The names of the objects that are deleted when a fax description is deleted are the names specified when the fax description was created.

Example 1

The command that follows deletes the fax description that is named FAXD01. Deleting this fax description results in the following:

- The member that is named FAXD01 is removed from the fax configuration database file.
- The APPC controller that is named FAXD01 is deleted.
- The APPC device description that is named FAXCTL01 is deleted.
- The APPC device description that is named FAXSND01C is deleted.
- The printer device description that is named FAXSND01P is deleted.
- The APPC device description that is named FAXRCV01 is deleted.

```
DLTFAXD FAXD(FAXD01)
```

Example 2

The command that follows deletes a fax description that is named FAX9. Deleting this fax description results in the following:

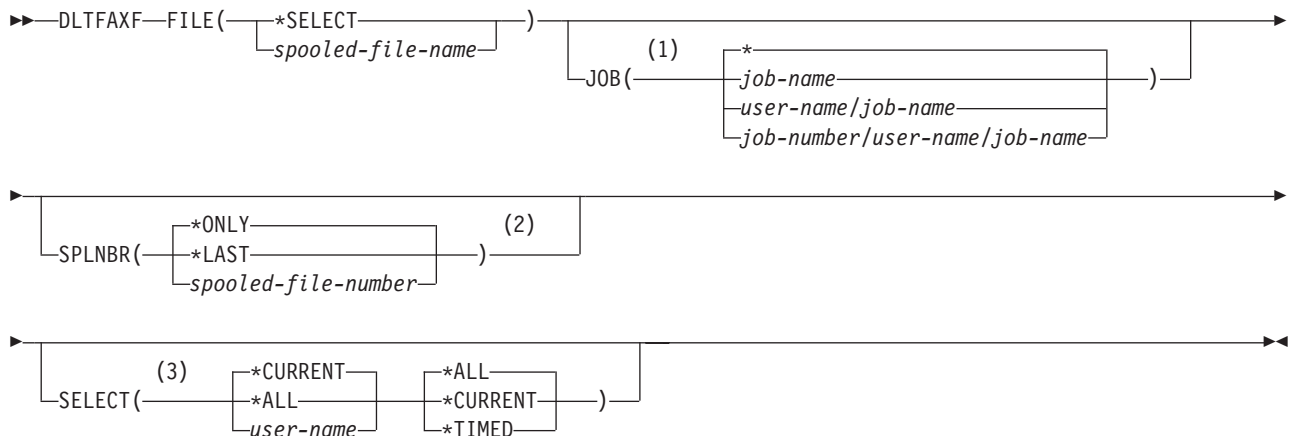
- The member that is named FAX9 is removed from the fax configuration database file.
- The APPC controller that is named FAX9 is deleted.
- The APPC device description that is named FAX9C is deleted.
- The APPC device description that is named FAX9SC is deleted.
- The printer device description that is named FAX9SP is deleted.
- The APPC device description that is named FAX9R is deleted.

```
DLTFAXD FAXD(FAX9)
```

DLTFAXF

DLTFAXF (Delete Fax File) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. The JOB parameter is only allowed if FILE(*spooled-file-name*) is used.
2. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.
3. **SELECT* only allowed FILE(**SELECT*)

Purpose

The Delete Fax File (DLTFAXF) command is used to delete the specified spooled file from the QFFSNDFAX, QFFSNDERR, and QFFSNDSAV output queues.

Restriction

Only the QFFSNDFAX, QFFSNDERR, and QFFSNDSAV output queues that are located in QUSRSYS library are searched.

Required Parameter

FILE

Specifies the name of the spooled file to be deleted from the system.

***SELECT:** All spooled files on the QFFSNDFAX, QFFSNDERR, and QFFSNDSAV output queues located in the QUSRSYS library that meet the selection requirements specified in the SELECT keyword are deleted from the system. This value is mutually exclusive with the JOB and SPLNBR parameters. Specifying **SELECT* causes the JOB and SPLNBR keywords to be ignored.

spooled-file-name: Specifies the name of the spooled file to be deleted from the QFFSNDFAX, QFFSNDERR, or QFFSNDSAV output queue.

Optional Parameters

JOB

Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file to be deleted.

*****: The job that submitted this DLTFAXF command is the job that created the spooled file.

job-name: Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file. The job name can be specified as either a simple or a qualified job name. If you specify a simple job name (no qualifiers are given), all of the jobs currently in the system are searched for that simple job name.

If duplicate job names are found, all of the duplicate names are displayed in qualified form. You can then specify a fully qualified job name on the command.

A qualified job name is formatted as *job-number/user-name/job-name*.

job-number: The unique 6-digit number that is assigned to each job by the system.

user-name: The name of the user profile under which the job was run. The user name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

job-name: The simple (unqualified) name of the job. The job name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

SPLNBR

Specifies the number of the spooled file to be deleted. You must specify a value other than *ONLY when the job creates more than one spooled file and the files have the same file name.

***ONLY**: Specifies that only one spooled file from the job has the specified file name; therefore, the spooled file number is not required.

***LAST**: Specifies that the spooled file with the highest number is the file to be deleted.

spooled-file-number: Specifies the number of the spooled file with the specified file name to be deleted.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

SELECT

Specifies which group of spooled files is selected for deletion. The following positional values can be specified to select the spooled printer files:

- The user that created the file
- The user data tag associated with the file

Only files that meet each of the requirements are deleted.

Element 1: User Values

***CURRENT**: Only spooled files created by the user running this command are deleted.

***ALL**: Spooled files created by all users are deleted.

user-name: Specifies the name of the user who created the spooled files that are to be deleted.

DLTFAXF

Element 2: User Data Values

***ALL:** Spooled files with any user data tag that is specified are deleted.

***CURRENT:** Only spooled files with user data tags that are specified as *CURRENT are deleted.

***TIMED:** Only spooled files with user data tags that are specified as *TIMED are deleted.

Example

The command that follows specifies:

- To delete the spooled file named WEEKDATA (of job JOBNAM1, for user PJK0126, and job number 000416) from the system.
- Spooled files with different names that are produced by the job that is named JOBNAM1 are not affected by this command.
- If the job produced more than one file that is named WEEKDATA, no file is deleted because SPLNBR(*ONLY) is assumed.

```
DLTFAXF FILE(WEEKDATA) JOB(000416/PJK0126/JOBNAM1)
```

DSPFAX (Display Fax) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

►►—DSPFAX—DOC—(—*document-name*—)—FLR—(—*folder-name*—)——————►◄

Purpose

The DSPFAX command displays documents created by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product on an InfoWindow II 3489 display, or other image-capable 5250 emulation program, or Network Station at Release 3 or greater. These documents are of the type MO:DCA, MO:DCAFAX, RFT:DCA, or RFT:DCAFAX. You can use the following options to create fax documents of these types:

- The File Fax (FILFAX) command
- The File option from the Facsimile Support for AS/400 command Work with Fax (WRKFAX)
- The File option from the Facsimile Support for AS/400 command Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX)

Documents from other sources may not display as expected. Only image objects are displayed: other object types (such as text, bar codes, or graphics) are not displayed. Each image is processed as a separate page, and can be accessed using the Page-up and Page-down keys.

Parameters

DOC

Enter the name of the fax document you want to display.

document-name: Specifies the name of the fax document to be displayed. The name can be up to 12 characters in length, in the format: **nnnnnnn.nnn**. For example, RECEIPTS.AUG.

FLR

Enter the name of the folder that contains the fax document you want to display.

folder-name: Specifies the name of the folder that contains the specified fax document. If the document is filed in a folder that is contained in another folder, the folder name can consist of a series of folder names in the format: **nnn/nnn/nnn**. For example, 1995/ANNRPTS. The folder name can be up to 63 characters in length.

Example

The following command shows the document NEWITEM in folder CURRENT, which is contained in folder SCHEDULES.

```
DSPFAX DOC(NEWITEM) FLR(SCHEDULES/CURRENT)
```

Using the DSPFAX Command

The DSPFAX command checks whether you are using an InfoWindow II 3489 display, or a Network Station at Release 3 or greater, and displays the fax document that is specified on the DOC and FLR parameters. If you are not using an InfoWindow II 3489 display, or a Network Station at Release 3 or greater, a 5250 emulation program is used.

DSPFAX Program Example

Following is an example of using the DSPFAX command in a control language (CL) program to view a received fax image. The DSPFAX command is called to attempt to display the image on an InfoWindow II 3489 display or a Network Station at Release 3 or greater. If message FAX4010 is returned, the display is not an InfoWindow II 3489 display or a Network Station at Release 3 or greater.

```
BEGIN:      PGM          PARM(&DOCUMENT &FOLDER)
            DCL          VAR(&DOCUMENT) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(12)
            DCL          VAR(&FOLDER)   TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(63)
            DCL          VAR(&MSGDTA) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(256)
            DCL          VAR(&MSGID) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(7)
            DCL          VAR(&MSGF) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)
            DCL          VAR(&MSGFL) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)

/* Attempt to display on InfoWindow II 3489 display, Network      */
/* Station at Release 3 or greater, or other image capable 5250   */
/* emulator or display.                                          */
/*                                                                 */
            DSPFAX      DOC(&DOCUMENT) FLR(&FOLDER)

            MONMSG      MSGID(CPF0000)
            MONMSG      MSGID(FAX0000)
            MONMSG      MSGID(OF0000)

/* Check messages sent from DSPFAX. If a completion message, the */
/* fax was successfully displayed. End the program.              */
/* Check if any completion messages were received.              */
/*                                                                 */
            RCVMSG      MSGTYPE(*COMP) MSGDTA(&MSGDTA) MSGID(&MSGID) +
                       MSGF(&MSGF) MSGFLIB(&MSGFL)
```

DSPFAX

```
/*                                                                    */
/* Check if the complete normally message was sent.                  */
/*                                                                    */
      IF      (&MSGID = 'FAX4002') THEN(DO)
      GOTO    DSPCPLT
      ENDDO

/*                                                                    */
/* Check if any diagnostic messages were received.                  */
/*                                                                    */
      CHGVAR  VAR(&MSGID) VALUE(' ')
      RCVMSG  MSGTYPE(*DIAG) MSGDTA(&MSGDTA) MSGID(&MSGID) +
              MSGF(&MSGF) MSGFLIB(&MSGFL)

/*                                                                    */
/* Check if the special message id is FAX4010; the display is not   */
/* a 3489 or other image capable display or emulator.              */
/*                                                                    */
      IF      (&MSGID = 'FAX4010') THEN(DO)
      RCVMSG  MSGTYPE(*DIAG) MSGDTA(&MSGDTA) MSGID(&MSGID) +
              MSGF(&MSGF) MSGFLIB(&MSGFL)
      GOTO    NOTA3489
      ENDDO

      NOTA3489:

/*                                                                    */
/* The display is not a 3489. Perform the desired action.           */
/* (Run a user-supplied program at this point.)                    */
/*                                                                    */
      DSPCPLT:

/*                                                                    */
/* Document successfully displayed. Perform the desired action.     */
/* (Run a user-supplied program at this point.)                    */
/*                                                                    */

      ENDPGM:
      ENDPGM
```

Common Errors When Displaying Faxes

The following are messages you might commonly receive when using the DSPFAX command:

FAX4002

The document has been successfully displayed.

FAX4008

Image object exceeds maximum size.

FAX4010

Device does not support image display.

FAX4098

Errors occurred while displaying a fax document. See previously displayed messages for more information.

EDTFAXDST (Edit Fax Distribution List) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

```

▶▶—EDTFAXDST—CURRENT—(—distribution-list-name—)—————▶
▶—NEW—(—*SAME—distribution-list-name—*SAME—distribution-list-description—)————▶▶

```

Purpose

The Edit Fax Distribution List (EDTFAXDST) command allows you to change the name or description of a fax distribution list. To use this command, you must have a fax profile and you must have *CHANGE or *ALL authority to the distribution list.

Parameters

CURRENT

Specifies the name of the distribution list to be changed. This parameter is required.

distribution-list-name: Specifies the name of the distribution list to be changed.

NEW

Specifies the new information for the distribution list. The possible values for the distribution list name are:

***SAME:** The fax distribution list name remains unchanged.

distribution-list-name: The new name for the fax distribution list. The name can be up to 30 characters in length.

Possible values for the distribution list description are:

***SAME:** The fax distribution list description remains unchanged.

distribution-list-description: The new description for the fax distribution list. The description can be up to 30 characters.

Example

The command that follows specifies to change the name of the fax distribution list, SUPPLIERS, to OLD SUPPLIERS.

```
EDTFAXST CURRENT(SUPPLIERS)
NEW('OLD SUPPLIERS')
```

EDTFAXPRF (Edit Fax Profile) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

```

▶▶—EDTFAXPRF—————▶▶

```

EDTFAXPRF

Purpose

The Edit Fax Profile (EDTFAXPRF) command presents the Edit Fax Profile display. From this display, you can change fields within your fax user profile. Your fax user profile contains information to be used in processing your fax transmissions.

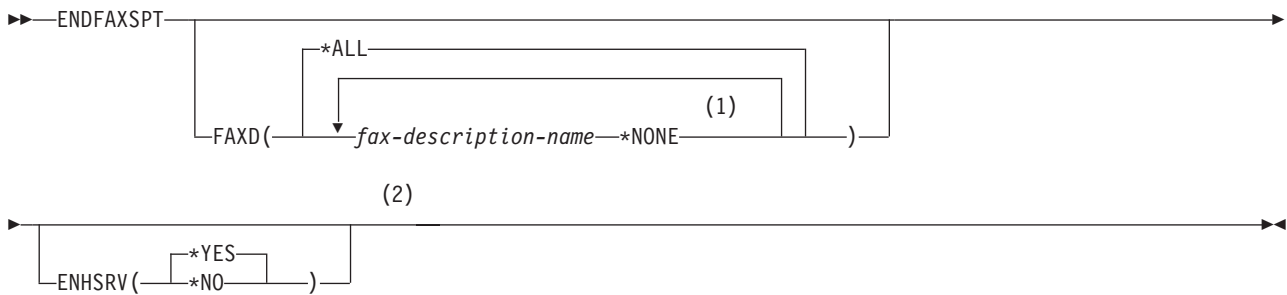
Unless you are a fax administrator, you cannot edit another user's fax profile. You can edit your own profile to specify any of the following:

- Whether you want to use the basic fax environment or Enhanced Services
- Cover page information, including the fax title, from lines, and comments
- A cover page printer file with your own letterhead or company logo
- How you want to receive completion acknowledgments
- The transmission mode you want to use
- A specific fax controller for transmission
- The fax image viewing program you want to send
- A specific time at which faxes are to be sent

There are no parameters for this command.

ENDFAXSPT (End Fax Support) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. A maximum of 20 repetitions positionally.
2. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command ends the jobs associated with each fax description name and ends the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product in each fax controller. Jobs in the fax subsystem already in the process of being sent or received continue to complete after the ENDFAXSPT command is entered. Specifying *ALL ends the QFAXSBS subsystem, all jobs within that subsystem and the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product in each fax controller.

Restrictions

You must have *JOBCTL special authority to use the ENDFAXSPT command. You must also have object operational and update data authority to the QAFFCFG fax configuration file in the QUSRSYS library. To end Enhanced Services, you must be a fax administrator.

Parameters

FAXD

The names of the fax descriptions that are to be used when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is ended. These fax descriptions identify the fax controllers that are to be ended.

***ALL:** All active fax controllers, and the QFAXSBS subsystem are ended. This is the only entry for the FAXD parameter that ends the QFAXSBS subsystem.

fax-description-name: The names of the fax descriptions associated with the fax controllers to be ended. You can specify a maximum of 20 fax description names.

***NONE:** No fax descriptions are to be used when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is ended. If you specify *NONE, you must specify *YES for the ENHSRV parameter.

ENHSRV:

Enhanced Services and all associated jobs end.

***YES:** Specifies that Enhanced Services jobs are to end when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product ends.

***NO:** Specifies that Enhanced Services jobs are not to end when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product ends.

Examples

Example 1

The command that follows ends the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for all active fax controllers and the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product subsystem. If Enhanced Services is running, it ends after the command is entered.

```
ENDFAXSPT
```

Example 2

The command that follows ends the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product for the controllers associated with the FAXD08 and FAXD09 fax descriptions. The QFAXSBS subsystem remains active after this command has completed.

```
ENDFAXSPT FAXD(FAXD08 FAXD09)
```

Example 3

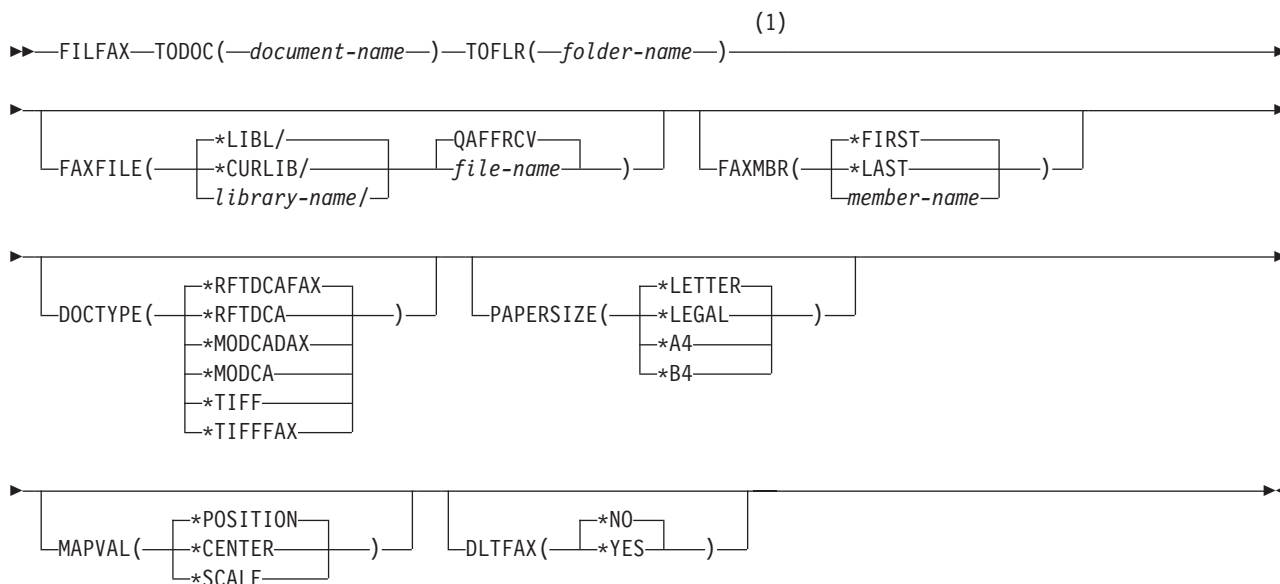
The command that follows ends only Enhanced Services. Any active fax controllers are not affected by this command.

```
ENDFAXSPT FAXD(*NONE) ENHSRV(*YES)
```

FILFAX

FILFAX (File Fax) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The File Fax (FILFAX) command files a fax as a document in a folder.

Restrictions

You must have the following authorizations to use the FILFAX command:

- To file the fax and not delete the database file member containing the fax:
 - *CHANGE authority to the folder in which the fax is being filed
 - Object operational and read data authority to the database file containing the fax to be filed
- To file the fax and delete the database file member containing the fax:
 - *CHANGE authority to the folder in which the fax is being filed
 - Object operational, object existence, and read data authority to the database file that contains the fax to be filed and deleted

Parameters

TODOC

Specifies the name of the document where the fax is filed. This name can be up to 12 characters long. See the *Getting Started with OfficeVision/400* for a complete description of document name.

Note: If you are going to file a received fax as *TIFF or *TIFFFAX, the name for the TODOC parameter should be no more than 8 characters long.

TOFLR

Specifies the name of the folder containing the document. A folder name can consist of a series of folder names (FLR1/FLR2/FLRx) if the document is being filed in a folder that is contained in another folder. This name can be up to 63 characters long.

FAXFILE

Specifies the qualified name of the database file containing the fax being filed. The data in this file must be in the format used by the receive fax function.

Possible library name values are:

***LIBL:** The library list is used to locate the database file containing the fax being filed.

***CURLIB:** The current library is used to locate the database file containing the fax being filed.

library-name: The name of the library where the database file containing the fax to be filed is located.

Possible file name values are:

QAFFRCV: The fax being filed is located in the database file QAFFRCV. This is the default file used by the receive fax function.

file-name: The name of the database file that contains the fax being filed.

FAXMBR

Specifies the name of the database file member that contains the fax to be filed.

***FIRST:** The first member (in the order the members were created) in the database file contains the fax being filed.

***LAST:** The last member (in the order the members were created) in the database file contains the fax being filed.

member-name: The name of the database file member that contains the fax being filed.

DOCTYPE

Specifies the document type that is assigned to the fax to be filed. For more information on document types that are supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, see "Integrating the Facsimile Support for AS/400 and OfficeVision for AS/400 Products" on page 11.

***RFTDCAFAX:** The document type is set to *RFTDCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to view, edit, print, or send the document.

***RFTDCA:** The document type is set to *RFTDCA when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to edit, print, or send the document.

***MODCAFAX:** The document type is set to *MODCAFAX when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to view, print, or send the document.

***MODCA:** The document type is set to *MODCA when filing the received fax. This type allows you to use OfficeVision product to send the document.

FILFAX

***TIFF:** The fax is filed in class-F TIFF format. An extension of TIF will be added to the document name by fax support. The document type in OfficeVision is PCFILE. Filing the fax as *TIFF allows you to send the document to Lotus Domino users for their use and viewing. It also allows viewing by most web browsers.

***TIFFFAX:** The fax is filed in class-F TIFF format. An extension of FAX will be added to the document name by fax support. The document type in OfficeVision is PCFILE. Filing the fax as *TIFFFAX is recommended for the System Application Program (SAP) AL Viewer and possibly additional specialized viewing software packages.

PAPERSIZE

Specifies the paper size to be used when formatting the fax. The paper size determines the size of the output area when the fax is printed or displayed. Due to the boundary areas that are required by the printers, the output area is slightly smaller than the specified paper size.

***LETTER:** The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (216 x 279 mm, 8.50 x 11.00 in.).

***LEGAL:** The fax is formatted for a legal-size output area (216 x 356 mm, 8.50 x 14.00 in.).

***A4:** The fax is formatted for an A4-size output area (210 x 297 mm, 8.27 x 11.69 in.).

***B4:** The fax is formatted for a B4-size output area (250 x 353 mm, 9.84 x 13.90 in.).

MAPVAL

Specifies how the fax image is placed in the output area.

***POSITION:** Specifies position and trim. The top left corner of the fax is placed in the top left corner of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed along the right or bottom edges.

Note: *POSITION is the only mapping value that is valid for document types *RFTDCA and *RFTDCAFAX.

***CENTER:** Specifies center and trim. The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed equally along all four edges.

***SCALE:** Specifies scale to fit. The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. The fax is then scaled to fit within the boundaries of the output area.

DLTFAX

Specifies whether the database file member is to be deleted after the fax is filed.

***NO:** The database file member is not to be deleted after the fax is filed.

***YES:** The database file member is to be deleted after the fax is filed.

Examples

Example 1

The command that follows specifies the following:

- A fax is filed as the document that is named FAX1 in the FAXFLR folder.
- The fax being filed is in the first member (*FIRST is the default for the FAXMBR parameter) in the QAFFRCV database file. This is located by searching the job's library list (*LIBL/QAFFRCV is the default for the FAXFILE parameter).
- The document is to be created in RFT:DCA format (*RFTDCA is the default for the DOCTYPE parameter).
- The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (*LETTER is the default for the PAPERSIZE parameter).
- The fax is positioned and trimmed in the output area (*POSITION is the default for the MAPVAL parameter). *POSITION is the only valid MAPVAL value for faxes filed in RFT:DCA or RFT:DCAFAX format.
- The member that contains the fax is not deleted from the database file after the fax is filed (*NO is the default for the DLTFAX parameter).

```
FILFAX TODOC(FAX1) TOFLR(FAXFLR)
```

Example 2

The command that follows specifies the following:

- A fax is filed as a document that is named FAX2 in the FAXFLR folder.
- The fax being filed is the last member in the QAFFRCV database file. This is located by searching the job's library list (*LIBL/QAFFRCV is the default for the FAXFILE parameter).
- The document is to be created in MO:DCA format.
- The fax is formatted for a legal-size output area.
- The fax is centered and trimmed in the output area.
- The member that contains the fax is not deleted from the database file after the fax is filed (*NO is the default for the DLTFAX parameter).

```
FILFAX TODOC(FAX2) TOFLR(FAXFLR) FAXMBR(*LAST) DOCTYPE(*MODCA)
PAPERSIZE(*LEGAL) MAPVAL(*CENTER)
```

Example 3

The command that follows specifies the following:

- A fax is filed as a document that is named FAX3 in the FAXFLR3 folder.
- The fax being filed is in the member F704912315 in database file FAXFIL3, that is located in library FAXLIB.
- The document is to be created in MO:DCA format.
- The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (*LETTER is the default for the PAPERSIZE parameter).
- The fax is positioned and trimmed in the output area (*POSITION is the default for the MAPVAL parameter).
- The member that contains the fax is deleted from the database file after the fax is filed.

```
FILFAX TODOC(FAX3) TOFLR(FAXFLR3) FAXFILE(FAXLIB/FAXFIL3)
FAXMBR(F704912315) DOCTYPE(*MODCA) DLTFAX(*YES)
```

FILFAX

Example 4

“PRTFAX (Print Fax) Command” on page 175 shows an example of a CL program. This example shows how messages from a data queue are used with the PRTFAX command in a program that prints faxes as they are received. The program then deletes the faxes from the received file. You could also replace the PRTFAX command with the FILFAX command in this example program to file faxes.

Example 5

The command that follows specifies the following:

- A fax is filed as a document that is named FAX5 in the FAXFLR.
- The fax being filed is in the member F825914372 in database file FAXFIL5 located in library FAXLIB5.
- The document is to be created in TIFF format that will be sent to a Lotus Domino user.
- The fax is to be formatted for a letter-size output area.

```
FILFAX TODOC(FAX5) TOFLR(FAXFLR) FAXFILE(FAXLIB5/FAXFIL5)
      FAXMBR(F825914372) DOCTYPE(*TIFF)
```

Example 6

The command that follows specifies the following:

- A fax is filed as a document that is named FAX6 in the FAXFLR.
- The fax being filed is in the member F826014562 in database file FAXFIL6 located in library FAXLIB6.
- The document is to be created in TIFF format that will be viewed by the SAP viewer.
- The fax is to be formatted for a letter-size output area.

```
FILFAX TODOC(FAX6) TOFLR(FAXFLR) FAXFILE(FAXLIB6/FAXFIL6)
      FAXMBR(F826014562) DOCTYPE(*TIFFFAX)
```

GRTDSTAUT (Grant Fax Distribution List Authority) Command

Job: B,I PGM: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

```
▶▶—GRTDSTAUT—DST—(—distribution-list—)—————▶▶
▶—USRAUT—(—USER——user-name—)AUTHORITY—


—)—————▶▶
```

Purpose

The Grant Fax Distribution List Authority (GRTDSTAUT) command allows one or more users to be granted specific authority to a fax distribution list. To use this command, you must have a fax profile. You must also be the owner of the distribution list or have *ALL authority to the list.

Parameters

DST

Specifies the name of the fax distribution list to which you want to grant authority. This parameter is required.

distribution-list: Specifies the name of the fax distribution list.

USRAUT

Specifies one or more users to which authority for this fax distribution list is being granted, and the level of authority to grant. You can specify up to 100 users on this command.

USER: Specifies the user to whom you want to grant authority.

***PUBLIC**: The public is granted the associated authority to the fax distribution list.

user-name: A specific user ID is granted authority to the fax distribution list.

AUTHORITY: Indicates the level of authority to be granted to the specified user.

***USE**: The specified user has authority to read or display the distribution list.

***ALL**: The specified user has authority to read, display, update, or delete the fax distribution list, as well as to change the owner and grant or revoke authority to the fax distribution list.

***CHANGE**: The specified user has authority to read, display, and update the fax distribution list.

***EXCLUDE**: The specified user cannot perform any operations on this fax distribution list.

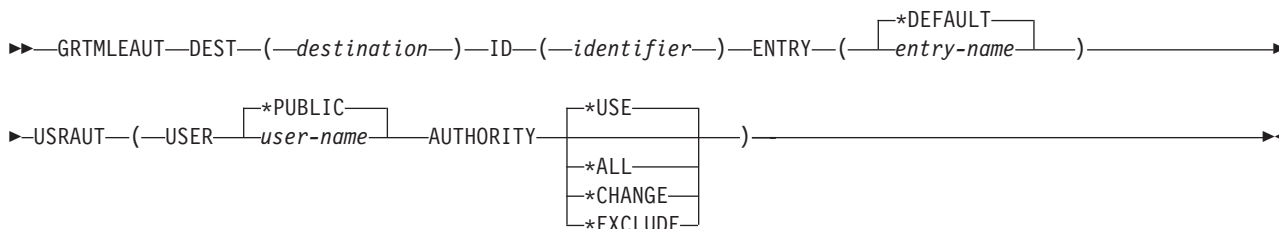
Example

The following command grants the security officer, QSECOFR, *ALL authority for the fax distribution list, SUPPLIERS. It also grants the public *USE authority for this distribution list.

```
GRTDSTAUT DST('SUPPLIERS')
USRAUT((QSECOFR *ALL) (*PUBLIC *USE))
```

GRTMLEAUT (Grant Master List Entry Authority) Command

Job: B,I PGM: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Purpose

The Grant Master List Entry Authority (GRTMLEAUT) command allows you to grant one or more users authority to a specific fax master list entry. To use this command,

GRTMLEAUT

you must have a fax profile. You must also be the owner of the fax master list entry, or have *ALL authority to the master list entry.

Parameters

DEST

Specifies the destination of the fax master list entry for which you want to grant authority. This parameter is required.

destination: Specifies the destination of the fax master list entry.

ID Specifies the identifier for the master list entry. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

identifier: Specifies the identifier for the fax master list entry.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry in the fax master list entry. The entry value serves as a qualifier for fax master list entries that have the same destination.

***DEFAULT:** The default entry for a destination is selected.

entry-name: Specifies a specific entry for a destination.

USRAUT

Specifies the user to which authority for this fax distribution list is being granted, and the level of authority to grant to that user. You can specify up to 100 users on this command.

USER: Specifies the authority to grant to the fax master list entry.

***PUBLIC:** The public is granted the associated authority to the fax master list entry.

user-name: A specific user is granted authority to the fax master list entry.

AUTHORITY: Indicates the level of authority to grant to the specified user.

***USE:** The specified user has authority to read or display the fax master list entry.

***ALL:** The specified user has authority to read, display, update, or delete the fax master list entry. The user also has authority to change the owner and grant or revoke authority to the fax master list entry.

***CHANGE:** The specified user has authority to read, display, and update the fax master list entry.

***EXCLUDE:** The specified user cannot perform any operations on this fax master list entry.

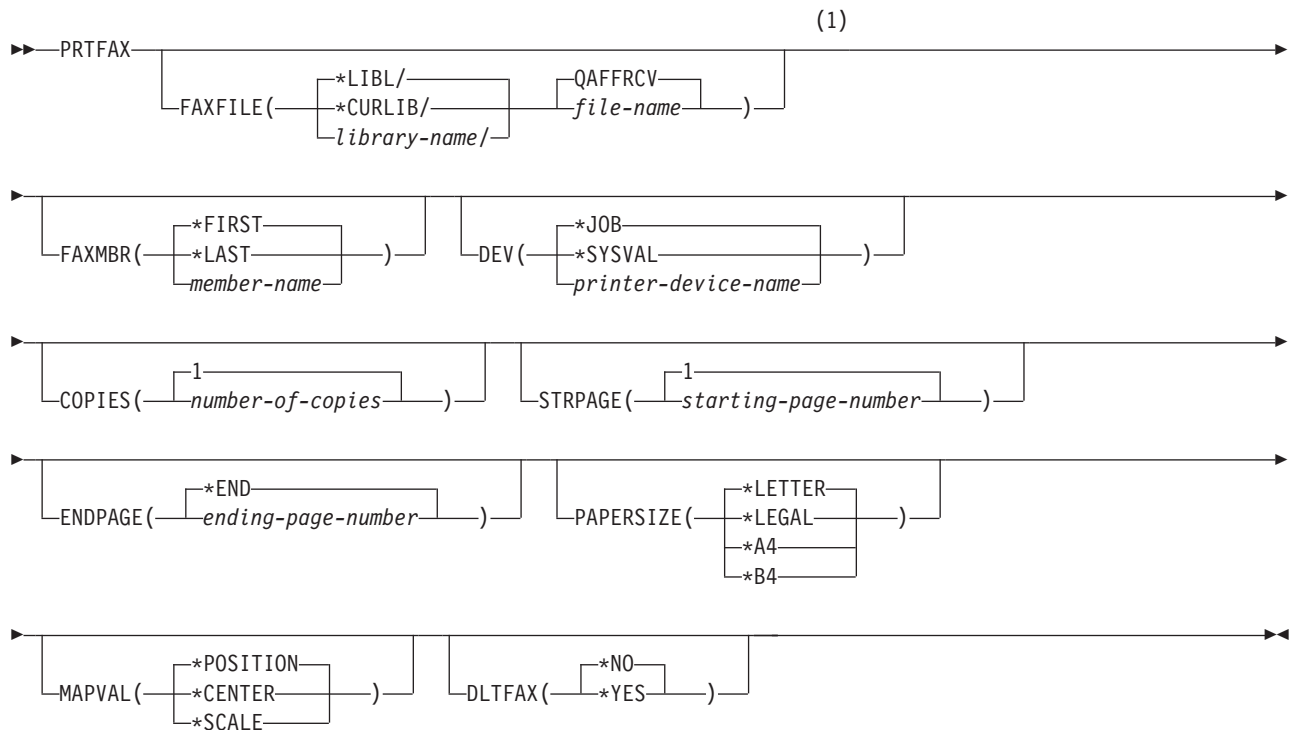
Example

The following command grants a specific user *PUBLIC authority to the fax master list entry, ABC OFFICE FURN.

```
GRTMLEAUT DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')
          ID(100)
          ENTRY('ORDER ENTRY')
          USRAUT((QSECOFR *ALL) (*PUBLIC *USE))
```


PRTFAX (Print Fax) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Print Fax (PRTFAX) command prints a fax. The printer on which the fax is printed must support Advanced Function Printing (AFP).

Restrictions

You must have the following authorizations to use the PRTFAX command:

- To print the fax and not delete the database file member containing the fax; you must have object operational and read data authority to the database file containing the fax to be printed.
- To print the fax and delete the database file member containing the fax; you must have object operational, object existence, and read data authority to the database file containing the fax to be printed and deleted.

Parameters

FAXFILE

Specifies the qualified name of the database file containing the fax being printed. The data in this file must be in the format used by the receive fax function.

Possible library name values are:

PRTFAX

***LIBL:** The library list is used to locate the database file containing the fax being printed.

***CURLIB:** The current library is used to locate the database file containing the fax being printed.

library-name: The name of the library where the database file that contains the fax to be printed is located.

Possible file name values are:

QAFFRCV: The fax being printed is located in the database file QAFFRCV. This is the default file used by the receive fax function.

file-name: The name of the database file that contains the fax being printed.

FAXMBR

Specifies the name of the database file member containing the fax being printed.

***FIRST:** The first member (in the order the members were created) in the database file contains the fax being printed.

***LAST:** The last member (in the order the members were created) in the database file contains the fax being printed.

member-name: The name of the database file member that contains the fax being printed.

DEV

Specifies the name of the output queue where the fax being printed is placed. The printer that is associated with this queue must support Advanced Function Printing.

***JOB:** The fax is placed on the default output queue for the job. This is the value that is specified by the OUTQ parameter on the CRTJOB command.

***SYSVAL:** The fax is placed on the output queue with the same name as the printer specified in the system value QPRTDEV.

printer-device-name: The name of the output queue where the fax is placed.

COPIES

Specifies the number of fax copies to be printed. Valid values range from 1 to 255.

1: One copy of the fax is to be printed.

number-of-copies: The number of fax copies to be printed.

STRPAGE

Specifies the page on which printing of the fax starts. This parameter is used for partial printing of a fax.

1: Printing starts with page 1 of the fax.

starting-page-number: The page number on which printing of the fax starts.

ENDPAGE

Specifies the page on which printing of the fax ends. This parameter is used for partial printing of a fax.

***END:** Printing ends at the end of the fax.

ending-page-number: The page number on which printing of the fax ends.

PAPERSIZE

Specifies the paper size to be used when formatting the fax. The paper size determines the size of the output area when the fax is printed. Due to the boundary areas that are required by the printers, the output area is slightly smaller than the specified paper size. Specifying a paper size larger than the paper in the printer may result in errors when printing a fax.

***LETTER:** The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (216 x 279 mm, 8.50 x 11.00 in.).

***LEGAL:** The fax is formatted for a legal-size output area (216 x 356 mm, 8.50 x 14.00 in.).

***A4:** The fax is formatted for an A4-size output area (210 x 297 mm, 8.27 x 11.69 in.).

***B4:** The fax is formatted for a B4-size output area (250 x 353 mm, 9.84 x 13.90 in.).

MAPVAL

Specifies how the fax image is placed in the output area.

***POSITION:** Specifies position and trim. The top left corner of the fax is placed in the top left corner of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed along the right or bottom edges.

***CENTER:** Specifies center and trim. The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. Any portion of the fax that falls outside the boundaries of the output area is trimmed equally along all four edges.

***SCALE:** Specifies scale to fit. The center of the fax is placed in the center of the output area. The fax is then scaled to fit within the boundaries of the output area.

DLTFAX

Specifies whether the database file member is to be deleted after the fax is printed.

***NO:** The database file member is not to be deleted after the fax is printed.

***YES:** The database file member is to be deleted after the fax is printed.

Examples

Example 1

The following command specifies:

- A fax in the first member (*FIRST is the default for the FAXMBR parameter) of the QAFFRCV database file is printed. The database file is located by searching the job's library list (*LIBL/QAFFRCV is the default for the FAXFILE parameter).
- The printed fax is placed on the default output queue for the job (*JOB is the default for the DEV parameter).
- One copy of the fax is printed (1 is the default for the COPIES parameter).

PRTFAX

- All the pages of the fax are printed (1 is the default for the STRPAGE parameter and *END is the default for the ENDPAGE parameter.)
- The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (*LETTER is the default for the PAPERSIZE parameter).
- The fax is positioned and trimmed in the output area (*POSITION is the default for the MAPVAL parameter).
- The member that contains the fax is not deleted from the database file after the fax is printed (*NO is the default for the DLTFAX parameter).

PRTFAX

Example 2

The following command specifies:

- A fax in the last member of the QAFFRCV database file is printed. The database file is located by searching the job's library list (*LIBL/QAFFRCV is the default for the FAXFILE parameter).
- The printed fax is placed on the output queue that has the same name as the printer that is specified in the system value QPRTDEV.
- Three copies of the fax are printed.
- Pages 3 through 8 of the fax are printed.
- The fax is formatted for a legal-size output area.
- The fax is scaled to fit within the output area.
- The member that contains the fax is not deleted from the database file after the fax is printed (*NO is the default for the DLTFAX parameter).

```
PRTFAX FAXMBR(*LAST) DEV(*SYSVAL) COPIES(3) STRPAG(3) ENDPAGE(8)
      PAPERSIZE(*LEGAL) MAPVAL(*SCALE)
```

Example 3

The following command specifies:

- A fax in the member F728015482 in the database file FAXFILE3 in the FAXLIB library is printed.
- The printed fax is placed on the AFPPRINT output queue.
- One copy of the fax is printed (1 is the default for the COPIES parameter).
- All the pages of the fax are printed (1 is the default for the STRPAGE parameter and *END is the default for the ENDPAGE parameter).
- The fax is formatted for a letter-size output area (*LETTER is the default for the PAPERSIZE parameter).
- The fax is positioned and trimmed in the output area (*POSITION is the default for the MAPVAL parameter).
- The member that contains the fax is deleted from the database file after the fax is printed.

```
PRTFAX FAXFILE(FAXLIB/FAXFILE3) FAXMBR(F728015482) DEV(AFPPRINT)
      DLTFAX(*YES)
```

Example 4

The following CL program example shows how messages from a data queue are used with the PRTFAX command in a program that prints faxes and deletes the fax from the received file as they are received. This program could also be used with the FILFAX command to file received faxes.

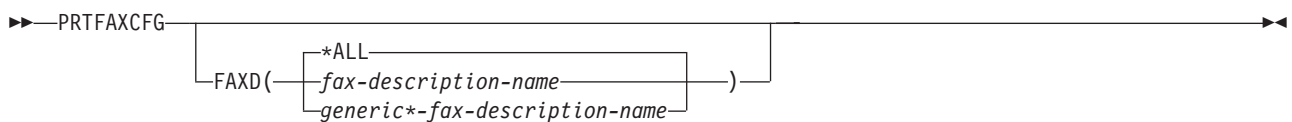
```

PGM
/* LENGTH OF THE MESSAGE ON THE DATA QUEUE */
DCL VAR(&MSGLEN) TYPE(*DEC) LEN(5 0) VALUE(2000)
/* MESSAGE RECEIVED FROM THE DATA QUEUE */
DCL VAR(&MSG) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(2000)
/* WAIT TIME = 4 HOURS */
DCL VAR(&WAIT) TYPE(*DEC) LEN(5 0) VALUE(14400)
/* RECEIVE FAX LIBRARY */
DCL VAR(&FAXL) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)
/* RECEIVE FAX FILE */
DCL VAR(&FAXF) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)
/* RECEIVE FAX MEMBER */
DCL VAR(&MBR) TYPE(*CHAR) LEN(10)
:
:
/* CALL THE PROGRAM TO RECEIVE THE MESSAGE FROM THE DATA QUEUE */
LOOP: CALL PGM(QRCVDTAQ) PARM(QFFRCVDQ QUSRSYS &MSGLEN +
&MSG &WAIT)
/* CHECK IF A MESSAGE WAS RECEIVED OR IF THE RECEIVE TIMED OUT */
IF COND(&MSGLEN *NE 0) THEN(DO)
/* BUILD THE LIBRARY NAME FROM THE DATA IN THE MESSAGE */
CHGVAR VAR(&FAXL) VALUE(%SST(&MSG 1 10))
/* BUILD THE FILE NAME FROM THE DATA IN THE MESSAGE */
CHGVAR VAR(&FAXF) VALUE(%SST(&MSG 11 10))
/* BUILD THE MEMBER NAME FROM THE DATA IN THE MESSAGE */
CHGVAR VAR(&MBR) VALUE(%SST(&MSG 21 10))
:
:
/* PRINT THE INBOUND FAX THAT WAS JUST RECEIVED */
PRTFAX FAXFILE(&FAXL/&FAXF) FAXMBR(&MBR) +
DLTFAX(*YES)
:
:
/* GO WAIT FOR THE NEXT INBOUND FAX TO BE RECEIVED */
GOTO CMDLBL(LOOP)
ENDDO
/* NO MESSAGE RECEIVED IN 4 HOURS - PROCESS TIMEOUT CONDITION */
:
:

```

PRTFAXCFG (Print Fax Configuration) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Purpose

The Print Fax Configuration (PRTFAXCFG) command creates a report that contains pertinent information from the fax configuration file (QAFFCFG in the QUSRSYS library). This report can be used to document the configuration of all fax descriptions on the system as well as to help in problem analysis. The report is placed in the QPFFCFG spooled file on the user's output queue.

The fax configuration report contains the following information:

- Fax description
- Type of connection
- Device names for control, send, and receive

PRTFAXCFG

- Individual fax card or port information by slot number for an external fax controller, or port position for an Integrated Fax Adapter. The report shows all cards or ports (FAX1 through FAX8 for an external fax controller, or FAX1 and FAX2 for the Integrated Fax Adapter), whether or not they are configured by the ADDFAXCRD command.
 - Send, receive, or both
 - Receive file and receive data queue
 - Transmitting subscriber identification (TSI)
 - Number of dial retries
 - Delay between retries
 - Type of dial
 - Error correction mode

Parameters

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax descriptions for which a report is created.

***ALL:** All fax descriptions defined in the QUSRSYS/QAFFCFG file are printed.

fax-description-name: The name of a single fax description.

generic-fax-description-name:* Specifies a generic name of the fax descriptions to be printed. A generic name is a character string of one or more characters that are followed by an asterisk (*); for example, FAX*. The asterisk substitutes for any valid characters. A generic name specifies all fax descriptions that begin with the generic prefix.

Examples

Example 1

The commands that follow create a report for all fax descriptions in the fax configuration file.

```
PRTFAXCFG
```

or

```
PRTFAXCFG FAXD(*ALL)
```

Example 2

The command that follows creates a report for the fax description FAXD01.

```
PRTFAXCFG FAXD(FAXD01)
```

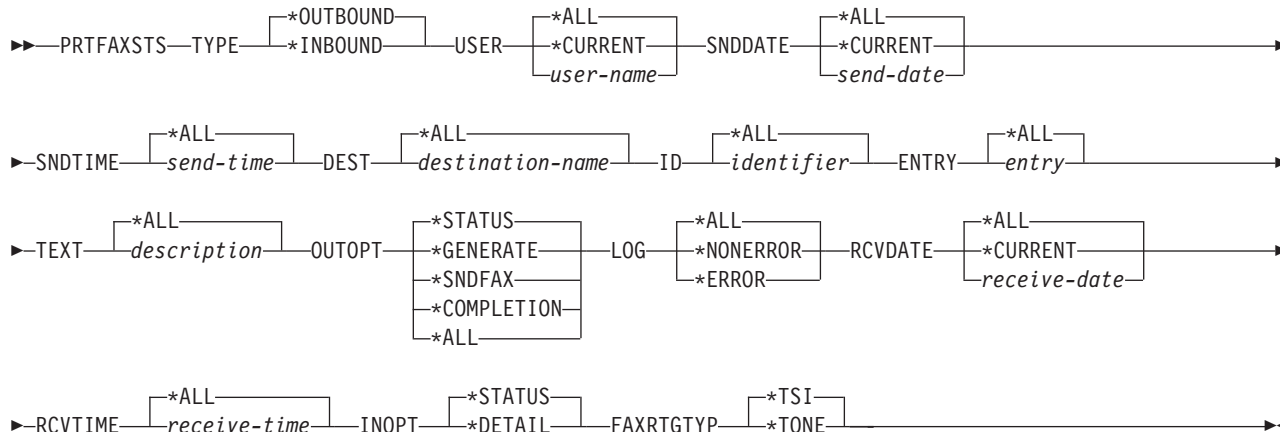
Example 3

The command that follows creates a report for all fax descriptions that begin with the letters FAX.

```
PRTFAXCFG FAXD(FAX*)
```

PRTFAXSTS (Print Fax Status) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Purpose

The Print Fax Status (PRTFAXSTS) command creates a report of inbound or outbound fax requests. The parameters you specify determine the level of detail in the report. Before you can use this command, you must have a fax profile.

Parameters

TYPE

Specifies the type of status report to create.

***OUTBOUND:** Creates a report of outbound faxes.

***INBOUND:** Creates a report of inbound faxes.

USER

Specifies which users should be included in the outbound status report.

***ALL:** The report lists faxes for all fax profiles.

***CURRENT:** The report lists only your own outbound fax requests.

user-name: The report lists faxes for the specified fax profile.

SNDDATE

Specify the submission date of the faxes you want included in the outbound fax report.

***ALL:** Selects all dates.

***CURRENT:** Selects only the current date.

send-date: Selects only the faxes to be submitted on the specified date. The date must be entered in the format that the QDATFMT system value specifies. When optional date separators are used, the date must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

PRTFAXSTS

SNDDTIME

Specify the time of submission for the faxes you want to include in the outbound fax report.

***ALL:** Selects all times.

send-time: Selects only the faxes to be submitted at the specified time. The outbound fax report will include fax requests that were sent at the time you specify or later. Enter the time in a 24-hour format, with or without separators.

DEST

Specify all or part of the destination name of the faxes you want to include in the report.

***ALL:** Specifies that all destinations are to be included in the report.

destination-name: Prints status for a specific destination name. Specify all or part of the destination name. Status for destinations that most closely match the name you enter is printed.

ID Specifies all or part of the identifier of the faxes for which you want to print status. The identifier serves as a qualifier for faxes that have the same destination.

***ALL:** Status for all identifiers is printed.

identifier: Status for the identifiers you specify is printed. Enter all or part of the identifier. Status for identifiers that most closely match the identifier you enter is printed.

ENTRY

Specify the entry of the faxes you want to include in the report. This entry serves as a qualifier for faxes that have the same destination.

***ALL:** Prints status information for all entries.

entry: Prints status for the entry you specify. Enter all or part of the entry.

TEXT

Specifies all or part of the description of the faxes you want to include in the report.

***ALL:** Specifies that all descriptions are selected.

description: Enter all or part of the description. Faxes with descriptions that most closely match the description you enter are included in the report.

OUTOPT

Specifies the level of detail to be included in an outbound fax report.

***STATUS:** Only status information is listed on the outbound fax request report. This information is similar to the status information that is listed when you use the CHKFAXSTS command.

***GENERATE:** Includes messages that result from the creation of the fax spooled file in the report.

***SNDFAX:** Includes messages that result from the processing of the SNDFAX command in the report.

***COMPLETION:** Includes fax completion acknowledgment messages in the report.

***ALL:** Includes all the above listed options in the status report.

LOG

Specifies the type of log entries to include in the outbound fax status report.

***ALL:** Includes all log entry types in the report.

***NONERROR:** Includes only the nonerror type of log entries in the report.

***ERROR:** Includes only the error type of log entries in the outbound fax status report.

RCVDATE

Specify the receive date for inbound faxes you want to be included in the report.

***ALL:** Includes all status record dates in the report.

***CURRENT:** Includes only the status records for the current date in the report.

receive-date: Includes only the status records matching the specified date value in the report. The date must be entered in the format specified by the system value QDATFMT. When optional date separators are used, the date must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

RCVTIME

Specifies status record times for the faxes you want to include in the inbound fax report.

***ALL:** Includes all status records in the report.

receive-time: Includes only faxes that were received at the specified time or later. The time is specified in a 24-hour format, with or without separators.

INOPT

Specifies which options to use when creating the inbound status report.

***STATUS:** Includes only the status information in the report.

***DETAIL:** Includes the status and detail information in the report.

FAXRTGTYP

Specifies the type of routing to be included in an inbound fax report.

***TSI:** Includes transmitting subscriber information (TSI) routing status information in the report.

***TONE:** Includes tone routing status in the report.

PRTFAXSTS

Example

The following command prints an outbound fax status report for all faxes that were sent to ABC OFFICE FURN.

```
PRTFAXSTS TYPE(*OUTBOUND) USER(*ALL)
          SNDDATE(*ALL) SNDTIME(*ALL)
          DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')
```

RMVFAXCRD (Remove Fax Card) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec

```
▶▶—RMVFAXCRD—FAXD(—fax-description-name—)—FAXCRD—(
  FAX1
  FAX2
  FAX3
  FAX4
  FAX5
  FAX6
  FAX7
  FAX8
  *ALL
)—————(1)—————▶▶
```

Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Remove Fax Card (RMVFAXCRD) command removes the description of a fax card or port from a fax description. If the card or port being removed supports inbound faxes, the fax database file and data queue that are associated with the card or port are not deleted. If this file and data queue are used only for this card or port, you should delete this file and data queue after you have processed any remaining faxes that have been received.

Restrictions

This command cannot be run if the active Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is using the specified fax description. To remove a fax card or port from a fax description, you must have the following authority to the configuration file:

- Object operational
- Object management
- Read data
- Add data
- Update data
- Delete data

Parameters

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax description from which the fax card or port description is removed. This name can have a maximum length of eight characters.

FAXCRD

Specifies the name of the fax card or port description that is removed from the fax description.

FAX1–FAX8: The name of the fax card or port description that is removed. The names can be FAX1 through FAX8 for an external fax controller, or FAX1 or FAX2 for an Integrated Fax Adapter port.

***ALL:** All fax card or port descriptions that are found in the fax description are removed.

Examples

“Examples” on page 107 shows the ADDFAXCRD command used to add the fax card descriptions being deleted in the following examples.

Example 1

The command that follows removes all of the fax card or port descriptions from the FAXD01 fax description. The database files and data queues that are associated with these fax card or port descriptions are not deleted. Data in the files and messages on the queues are still available for processing.

```
RMVFAXCRD FAXD(FAXD01) FAXCRD(*ALL)
```

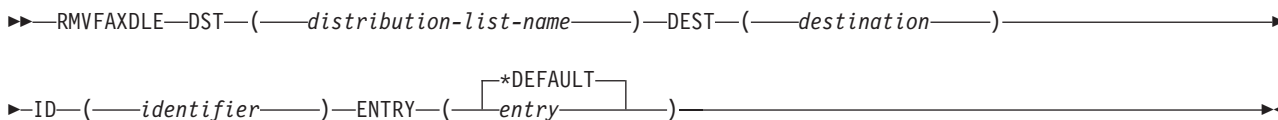
Example 2

The command that follows removes the description of the FAX7 fax card from the FAX9 fax description. The database file and data queue that are associated with this fax card description are not deleted. Data in the file and messages on the queue are still available for processing.

```
RMVFAXCRD FAXD(FAX9) FAXCRD(FAX7)
```

RMVFAXDLE (Remove Fax Distribution List Entry) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec



Purpose

The Remove Fax Distribution List Entry (RMVFAXDLE) command removes an entry from a fax distribution list. A fax distribution list represents a subset of the entries in the fax master list. To use this command, you must have a fax profile and *ALL authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the associated master list entry.

RMVFAXDLE

Parameters

DST

Specifies the name of the distribution list from which an entry is to be removed. This parameter is required.

distribution-list-name: Specifies the fax distribution list name.

DEST

Specifies the destination of the fax master list entry to be removed from the fax distribution list. This parameter is required.

destination: Specifies the destination of the master list entry to be removed from the distribution list.

ID Specifies the identifier of the fax master list entry to be removed from the distribution list. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

identifier: Specifies the identifier of the fax master list entry to be removed from the distribution list.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry in the fax master list entry to be removed from the distribution list. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

***DEFAULT:** The default entry for the destination is deleted.

entry: Specify the entry for the destination to be deleted.

Example

The following command removes the fax distribution list entry ABC OFFICE FURN for entry ORDER ENTRY from the SUPPLIERS distribution list.

```
RMVFAXDLE DST('SUPPLIERS')
          DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')
          ID(100)
          ENTRY('ORDER ENTRY')
```

RMVFAXDST (Remove Fax Distribution List) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

▶▶—RMVFAXDST—DST—(—*distribution-list-name*—)—————▶▶

Purpose

The Remove Fax Distribution List (RMVFAXDST) command deletes a fax distribution list. To use this command, you must have a fax profile. You must also have *ALL authority to the distribution list and *USE authority to the associated master list entries.

Parameters

DST

Specifies the name of the distribution list to be removed. This parameter is required.

distribution-list-name: Specifies the name of the distribution list to be removed.

Example

The following command removes the fax distribution list that is named SUPPLIERS.
 RMVFAXDST DST('SUPPLIERS')

RMVFAXMLE (Remove Fax Master List Entry) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

►► RMVFAXMLE—DEST—(—*destination*—)—ID—(—*identifier*—)—ENTRY—(—*entry*—)——►
 *DEFAULT
 entry

Purpose

The Remove Fax Master List Entry (RMVFAXMLE) command removes an entry from the fax master list. All dependent information is also removed.

You must have a fax profile to use this command. To remove a default (*DEFAULT) entry, you must have authority for the default entry and any associated entries. To remove a nondefault entry, you must have *ALL authority to the entry.

Parameters

DEST

Specifies the destination of the entry to be removed from the fax master list. This parameter is required.

destination: Specifies the destination of the entry to be removed from the fax master list.

ID Specifies the identifier of the entry to be removed from the fax master list. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination name.

identifier: Specifies the identifier of the entry to be removed from the fax master list. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination name.

ENTRY

Specifies the entry to be deleted from the fax master list. The entry serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination name. One default (*DEFAULT) entry is required for every destination name in the fax master list. One or more nondefault entries are optional.

***DEFAULT**: Deletes the default entry and all associated entries for the destination.

RMVFAXMLE

entry: Deletes a specific entry for a destination.

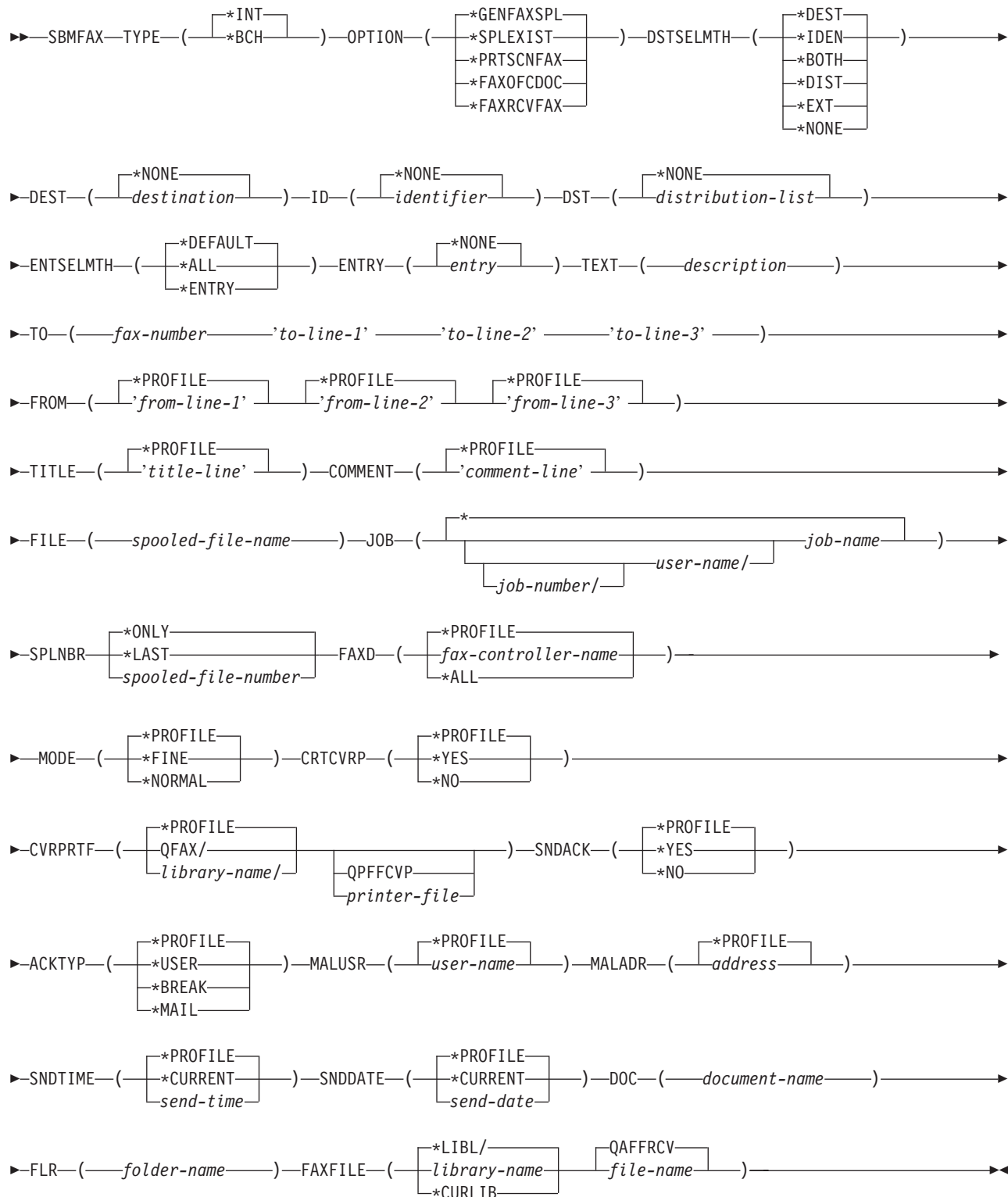
Example

The following command removes ORDER ENTRY from the ABC OFFICE FURN fax master list.

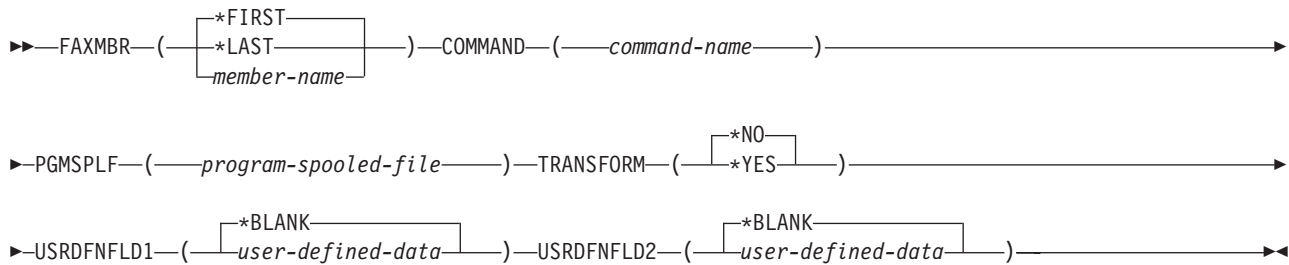
```
RMVFAXMLE DEST('ABC OFFICE FURN')  
          ID(100) ENTRY('ORDER ENTRY')
```

SBMFAX (Submit Fax) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



SBMFAX



Purpose

The Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command allows a user to use various options to submit a fax request to one or more destinations. You must have a fax profile to use this command.

Parameters

TYPE

Specifies whether or not to present the user with the submit fax interface when this command runs.

***INT:** Presents the user with the submit fax interface for controlling the fax request.

***BCH:** Does not present the user with the submit fax interface. SBFAX command parameters control the fax request.

OPTION

Specifies the option to be performed when the command runs.

***GENFAXSPL:** The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates the spooled file to be faxed by using the command you specified in the COMMAND parameter.

Note: Users must ensure that they have queued the spooled file to an inactive printer device.

***SPLEXIST:** The spooled file that you want to fax must already exist on your system. You must enter the name of the spooled file on the FILE parameter of this command.

***PRTSCNFAX:** Saves an image of the current display in a faxable format. Fax support uses the name you specify on the FILE parameter of this command to save the image in a spooled file.

Notes:

1. You can use this parameter only in interactive mode.
2. It is not necessary to press the print screen key.

***FAXOFCDOC:** Faxes an OfficeVision document to the requested destination. You must specify the name of the document on the DOC parameter and the name of the folder on the FLR parameter.

***FAXRCVFAX:** Faxes a previously received fax to a requested destination. You must specify the name of the received fax file on the FAXFILE parameter. Specify the name of the fax member on the FAXMBR parameter.

DSTSELMTH

Specifies how to select a fax destination.

***DEST:** Uses the contents of the DEST parameter to select the fax destination.

***IDEN:** Uses the contents of the IDEN parameter to select the fax destination.

***BOTH:** Uses the contents of both the DEST and the IDEN parameters to select the fax destination.

***DIST:** Selects all of the distribution list entries that are associated with the distribution list name of the DST parameter.

***EXT:** Uses external data to complete the fax destination information instead of retrieving the information from the Facsimile Support for AS/400 databases. This external information must be specified on the SBMFAX command.

***NONE:** Selects no destination for the fax request.

DEST

Specifies the destination value of a fax master list entry to associate with this fax request.

***NONE:** This parameter value is not used. If you use the Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command, the destination name appears as *NONE.

destination: Specifies the destination name to select for the fax request.

ID Specifies the identifier value of a fax master list entry to select for this fax request. The identifier serves as a qualifier for master list entries that have the same destination.

***NONE:** No identifier is used to select fax destinations.

identifier: Specifies the identifier to select for the fax request.

DST

Specifies the distribution list to use when selecting the fax destinations.

***NONE:** Uses no distribution list to select fax destinations.

distribution-list: Specifies the distribution-list name to use when selecting fax destinations.

ENTSELMTH

Specifies how to select a destination entry in the fax master list. Use this parameter only if there are multiple entries for a destination.

***DEFAULT:** Selects the default entry for a destination.

***ALL:** Selects all entries for a destination.

***ENTRY:** Selects a specific entry for a destination.

SBMFAX

ENTRY

Specifies which entry to select from a destination for a fax request.

***NONE:** Selects no entry from a destination.

entry: Specifies the fax master list entry.

TEXT

Specifies the description for this fax request.

description: You can specify a maximum of 30 characters for this parameter.

TO

Specifies the receiver information that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

fax-number: Specifies up to 32 characters for the fax telephone number.

'to-line-1': Specifies up to 40 characters for the first *to* line on the cover page.

'to-line-2': Specifies up to 40 characters for the second *to* line on the cover page.

'to-line-3': Specifies up to 40 characters for the third *to* line on the cover page.

FROM

Specifies the sender information that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

'from-line-1': Specifies up to 40 characters for the first *from* line on the cover page.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

'from-line-2': Specifies up to 40 characters for the second *from* line on the cover page.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

'from-line-3': Specifies up to 40 characters for the third *from* line on the cover page.

TITLE

Specifies the *title* line that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

'title-line': Specifies up to 40 characters for the *title* line on the cover page.

COMMENT

Specifies the *comment* line that appears on the cover page for this fax request.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

'comment-line': Specifies up to 40 characters for the *comment* line on the cover page.

FILE

Specifies the name of the spooled file that contains the fax you want to send.

JOB

Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file that contains the fax you want to send.

***:** The job that submitted this SNDFAX command is the job that created the spooled file.

job-name: Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file. Specify the name as a simple job name or a qualified job name. If you specify a simple job name (with no qualifiers), fax support searches all of the jobs that are currently in the system for that simple job name. The job name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

Fax support may find duplicate job names. If so, one of the following occurs.

- For an interactive job, fax support displays the duplicate names in qualified form. You can then specify a fully qualified job name on the command.
- For a batch job, fax support cannot process the command and writes an error to the job log.

The format of a qualified job name is *job-number/user-name/job-name*.

job-number: The system assigns this unique 6-digit number to each job.

user-name: The name of the user profile under which the job ran. The user name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

job-name: The simple (unqualified) name of the job.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

SPLNBR

Specifies the number of the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent. You must specify a value other than *ONLY when the job creates more than one spooled file and the files have the same file name. For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

***ONLY:** Because only one spooled file from the job has the specified file name, the spooled file number is not required.

***LAST:** The spooled file with the highest number contains the fax to be sent.

spooled-file-number: Specifies the number of the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent.

FAXD

Specifies the name of the fax description to use when sending a fax.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

***ANY:** Uses the first available fax controller for sending a fax.

fax-controller-name: Uses the name of an existing fax controller when sending a fax.

SBMFAX

MODE

Specifies the transmission mode to use when sending the fax.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

***FINE:** Uses fine mode to send the fax. For fine mode, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per horizontal inch by 196 dots per vertical inch. Fine mode produces a better quality fax than normal mode.

***NORMAL:** Uses normal mode to send the fax. For normal mode, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per horizontal inch by 98 dots per vertical inch. Normal mode requires less transmission time than fine mode.

CRTCVRP

Specifies whether the cover page is to be created.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

***YES:** Creates a cover page for this fax request.

***NO:** Does not create a cover page for this fax request. Fax support ignores any cover page information that you specify on this command.

CVRPRTF

Specifies the qualified name of a printer file to use for creating the cover page. If one of the following occurs, fax support uses the default printer file for creating the cover page.

- The specified library or printer file does not exist
- The user who submitted the SNDFAX command has no authority to the printer file

The possible values for the library are:

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

QFAX: The cover page printer file resides in the QFAX library.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library where the cover page printer file resides.

The possible values for the printer file are:

QPFFCVP: Uses the QPFFCVP printer file when sending the fax.

printer-file: Specifies the name of the printer file to use when sending the fax.

SNACK

Specifies whether fax support should send acknowledgment to the user who submitted the fax request.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

***YES:** Sends acknowledgment to the requesting user. The acknowledgment includes the following details:

- Destination
- Identifier
- Destination entry
- Fax number that was used

- Description of the fax
- Spooled file name
- Job name
- Job number
- Spooled file number

***NO:** Sends no acknowledgment to the requesting user.

ACKTYP

Specifies the type of acknowledgment message to be sent to the sender of the fax.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information that is contained in the fax profile.

***USER:** Sends an acknowledgment message to the user when the fax transmission completes.

***BREAK:** Sends a break message to the user when the fax transmission completes.

***MAIL:** Sends an OfficeVision mail item to the user when the fax transmission completes.

MALUSR

Specifies the user ID for the person to receive the mail item acknowledgment.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

user-name: Specifies the name of a valid AS/400 user ID to receive the mail item.

MALADR

Specifies the address of the user to receive the mail item acknowledgment.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

address: Specifies the address of the user ID to receive the mail item.

SNDDATE

Specifies the time that the fax is scheduled to be sent.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

***CURRENT:** Fax support sends the fax at the current time. If all outbound fax lines are in use, fax support sends the fax as soon as a line becomes available. If the destination in the fax master list has a send time specified, fax support uses that send time.

send-time: Specifies the time to send the fax. Fax support sends the fax as soon after the specified time as an outbound fax line becomes available. Specify the send time in a 24-hour format, with or without time separators.

SNDDATE

Specifies the date to send the outbound fax.

***PROFILE:** Uses the information in the fax profile.

SBMFAX

***CURRENT:** Sends the fax on the current day.

send-date: Specifies the date to send the fax. You must enter the date in the format that the QDATFMT system value specifies. If you use a date separator, you must use the separator character that the QDATSEP system value specifies. You must enclose a date with separator characters in apostrophes, as follows:

'mm/dd/yy'

DOC

Specifies the document name to use when creating the fax spooled file.

document-name: Specifies the document name to use when creating the spooled file to be faxed.

FLR

Specifies the folder name to use when creating the fax spooled file.

folder-name: Specifies the folder name to use when creating the spooled file to be faxed.

FAXFILE

Specifies the name of the fax database for filing the received fax.

The possible values for library are:

***LIBL:** Fax support searches the library list for the fax file database.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library that contains the fax file database.

The possible values for file are:

QAFFRCV: The QAFFRCV database contains the fax member.

file-name: Specifies the name of the database that contains the fax member.

FAXMBR

Specifies the name of the fax member that is used to create a spooled file to be faxed.

***FIRST:** Uses the first member of the database to create the spooled file to be faxed.

***LAST:** Uses the last member of the database to create the spooled file to be faxed.

member-name: Specifies a member name to create the spooled file to be faxed.

COMMAND

Specifies the command name to run and create the spooled file to be faxed.

command-name: Specifies the name of a valid command to create a spooled file to be faxed.

PGMSPLF

Specifies the spooled file that a program or command creates to be faxed.

program-spoiled file: Specifies the name of the spooled file that the program or command creates.

TRANSFORM

Specifies the option of using Host Print Transform or the OS/400 spool support to process the spooled file on the SBFAX command.

Note: Any user who has *CHANGE authority to the SBFAX command can change the default for TRANSFORM. If you are using a GammaLink fax adapter in an external controller, do not use Transform *YES.

***NO:** The OS/400 spool support is used to process the spooled file specified on the SBFAX command.

***YES:** Host Print Transform is used to process the spooled file specified on the SBFAX command.

USRDFNFLD1

Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request. This user-defined field provides additional information in the fax transaction log to allow users to locate specific fax transmission information.

***BLANK** No information for the user-defined field exists.

user-defined-data: Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request.

USRDFNFLD2

Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request. The user-defined field provides additional information in the fax transaction log to allow users to locate specific fax transmission information.

***BLANK** No information exists for the user-defined field.

user-defined-data: Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request.

Example

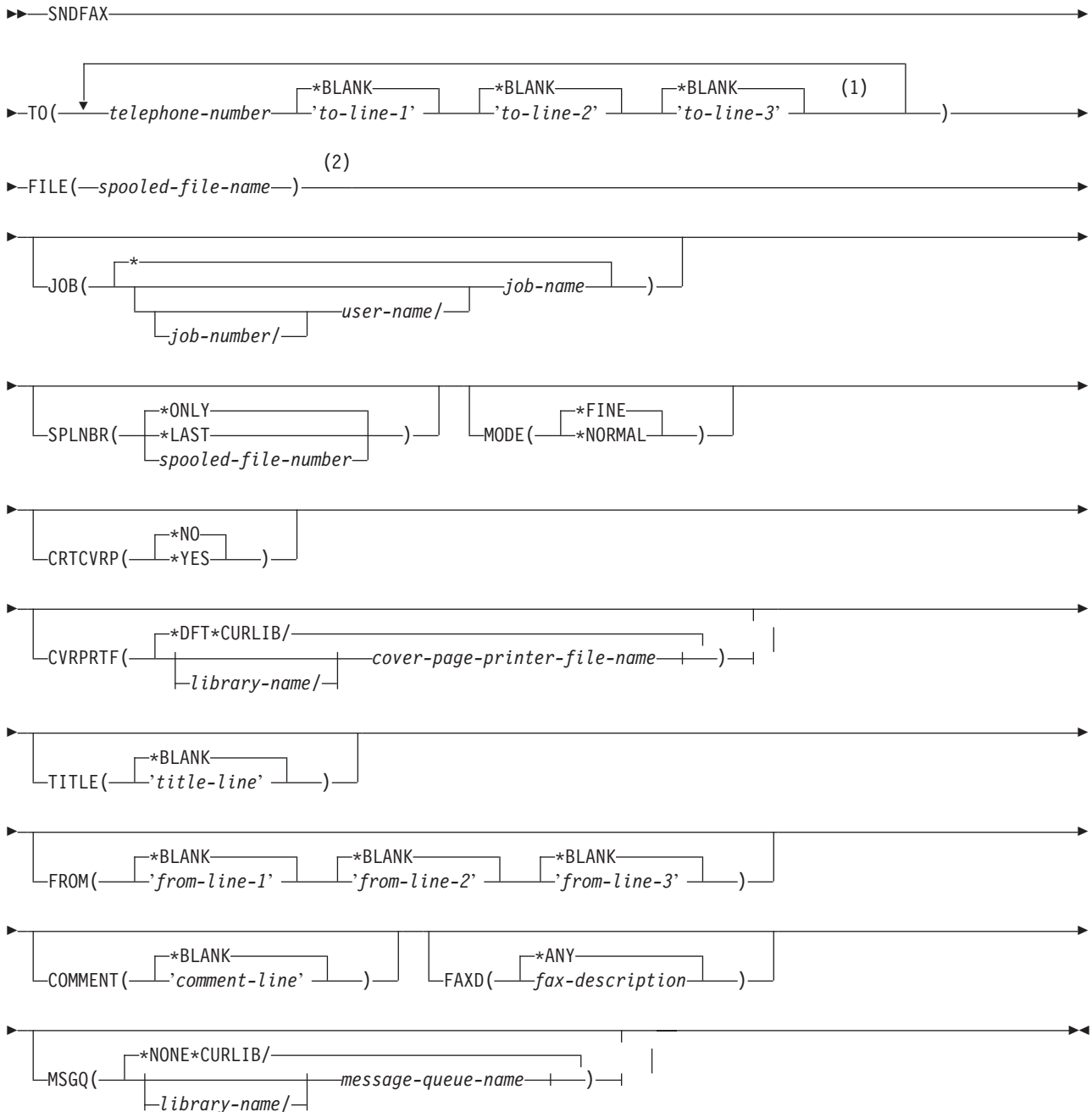
The following command sends an existing spooled file to the users on the fax distribution list, SUPPLIERS.

```
SBMFAX TYPE(*INT) OPTION(*SPLEXIST)
DSTSELMTH(*DIST)
DST('SUPPLIERS')
FILE(QSYSPT)
JOB(*)
SPLNBR(*LAST)
```

SNDFAX

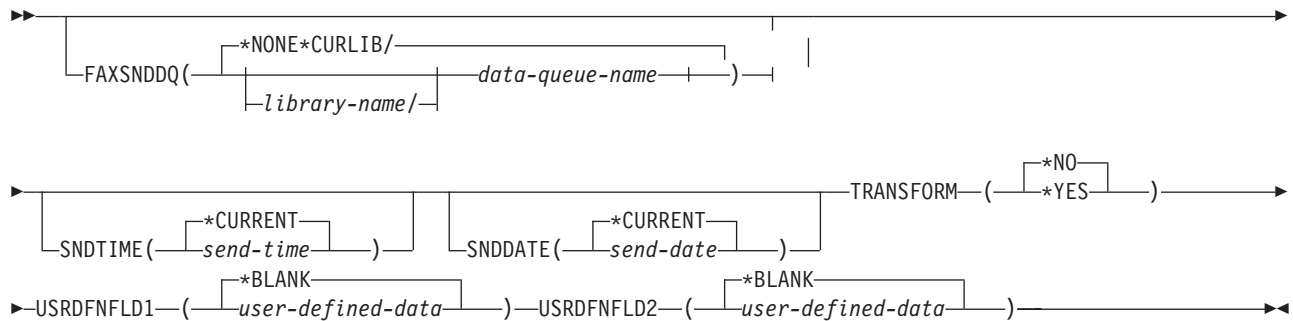
SNDFAX (Send Fax) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. A maximum of 25 repetitions positionally.
2. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.



Purpose

The Send Fax (SNDFAX) command sends a fax that is in a spooled file to one or more recipients.

Parameters

TO

Specifies the destination information for each recipient of the fax. The destination information is the telephone number of the fax node to which the fax is sent. The destination can include up to three optional lines of To information to be placed on the cover page. You can specify a maximum of 25 destinations in this parameter.

telephone-number: Specifies the telephone number of each destination fax node. One copy of the outbound fax, including the optional cover page, is sent to each telephone number. The telephone number can be up to 32 characters in length, and it can contain any combination of dialing and control codes. The telephone number must contain at least one dialing code. The dialing codes specify characters that make up the telephone number being dialed. The control codes represent pause durations that are inserted between the dialing codes. The dialing and control codes are:

Table 11. Dialing and Control Codes

Code	Description
0	Dialing code 0.
1	Dialing code 1.
2	Dialing code 2.
3	Dialing code 3.
4	Dialing code 4.
5	Dialing code 5.
6	Dialing code 6.
7	Dialing code 7.
8	Dialing code 8.
9	Dialing code 9.
A	Dialing code A. ¹
B	Dialing code B. ¹

SNDFAX

Table 11. Dialing and Control Codes (continued)

Code	Description
C	Dialing code C. ¹
D	Dialing code D. ¹
#	Dialing code #.
*	Dialing code *. ²
-	Control code for a pause of 0.0 seconds. ²
=	Control code for a pause of 0.5 seconds. On the 7852-400 modem, this code creates a pause of 1 second. ²
+	Control code for a pause of 1.0 seconds. ²
/	Control code for a pause of 2.0 seconds. ²
?	Control code for a pause of 4.0 seconds. ²
%	Control code for a pause of 6.0 seconds. ²
&	Control code for a special duration pause. In some countries, this control code provides a pause of 0.0 seconds. In other countries, it provides the pause that is required after reaching the Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Facsimile Network (F-Net). This pause is required after dialing 161 or 162 to access F-Net. See your <i>FaxConcentrator Administrator's Guide</i> to determine how to set this control code in your country. The 7852-400 modem ignores this code. See notes ¹ and ² .
:	This control code forces the fax machine to wait for a dial tone before dialing. This code applies only to certain countries. In countries where this code is required, if you do not enter it as the first character in the telephone number, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product automatically inserts it. If this code appears after the first character in the telephone number, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product waits for the second dial tone before it continues to dial. See note ² . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The GammaLink fax adapter converts this code to a semicolon (;).• The 7852-400 modem ignores this code.
> or <	Control code that forces a pause before dialing. This code applies only to certain countries. The length of the pause is country dependent. In countries where a pause before dialing is required, if the > or < code is not the first character in the telephone number, the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product automatically inserts it. The 7852-400 modem ignores this code. See notes ¹ and ² .

1 Only the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A and Integrated Fax Adapter support this code.

2 If you specify this character, you must enclose the telephone number in apostrophes.

To Line 1: Specifies the contents of the first *To* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the first *To* line is blank.

'to-line-1': Specifies the contents of the first *To* line. It can contain up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

To Line 2: Specifies the contents of the second *to* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the second *to* line is blank.

'to-line-2': Specifies the contents of the second *to* line. It can contain up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

To Line 3: Specifies the contents of the third *To* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies the third *to* line is blank.

'to-line-3': Specifies the contents of the third *To* line. It can be up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

FILE

Specifies the name of the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent.

JOB

Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file.

*****: The job that submitted this SND FAX command is the job that created the spooled file.

job-name: Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file. Specifies the job name as either a simple job name or a qualified job name. If you specify a simple job name (with no qualifiers), all of the jobs that are currently in the system are searched for that simple job name.

- If duplicate job names are found and the job is an interactive job, all of the duplicate names are displayed in qualified form. You can then specify a fully qualified job name on the command.
- If duplicate job names are found and the job is to be processed in batch mode, the command cannot be processed. An error is written to the job log.

A qualified job name is formatted as *job-number/user-name/job-name*.

job-number: The unique 6-digit number that the system assigns to each job.

user-name: The name of the user profile under which the job runs. The user name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

job-name: The simple (unqualified) name of the job. The job name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

SPLNBR

Specifies the number of the spooled file that contains the fax to be sent. You must specify a value other than ***ONLY** when the job creates more than one spooled file and the files have the same file name. For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

***ONLY**: Specifies that only one spooled file from the job has the specified file name. Therefore, the spooled file number is not required.

***LAST**: Specifies that the spooled file with the highest number is the file that contains the fax to be sent.

spooled-file-number: Specifies the number of the spooled file with the specified file name that contains the fax to be sent.

MODE

Specifies the mode that is used to send the fax.

***FINE**: Specifies that fine mode is used to send the fax. In fine mode, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per horizontal inch by 196 dots per vertical inch. Fine mode produces a better quality fax than normal mode.

SNDFAX

***NORMAL:** Specifies that the fax is to be sent in normal mode. In normal mode, the resolution of the outbound fax is 203 dots per horizontal inch by 98 dots per vertical inch. Normal mode uses less transmission time than fine mode.

CRTCVRP

Specifies whether a cover page is to be created.

***NO:** Specifies that no cover page is created for the outbound fax being sent. Any cover page information (the *to*, *title*, *from*, and *comment* line values) specified on the command is ignored.

***YES:** Specifies that a cover page is created for the outbound fax being sent. The cover page is created using the cover page information (the *to*, *title*, *from*, and *comment* line values) specified on the command. The cover page is sent to each recipient in the TO parameter list.

CVRPRTF

Specifies the qualified name of a printer file to be used to create the cover page. If the library or printer file you specify does not exist, the fax is sent using the default printer file. This also happens if the user who started the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is not authorized to the specified printer file.

***DFT:** Specifies that the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product should use the default cover page printer file, QPFFCVP in the QFAX library, to create the cover page.

Possible library name values are:

***CURLIB:** The cover page printer file resides in the current library of the job that submitted the SNDFAX command.

library-name: The name of the library where the cover page printer file resides.

cover-page-printer-file-name: Specifies the name of the printer file that is used to create the cover page.

TITLE

Specifies the *title* line for the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the *title* line is blank.

'title-line': Specifies the contents of the *title* line. This line can be up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

FROM

Specifies up to three *from* lines for the cover page for the outbound fax.

From Line 1: Specifies the contents of the first *from* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the first *from* line is blank.

'from-line-1': Specifies the contents of the first *from* line. This line can be up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

From Line 2: Specifies the contents of the second *from* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the second *from* line is blank.

'from-line-2': Specifies the contents of the second *from* line. This line can be up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

From Line 3: Specifies the contents of the third *from* line of the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the third *from* line is blank.

'from-line-3': Specifies the contents of the third *from* line. This line can be up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

COMMENT

Specifies the *comment* line for the cover page for the outbound fax.

***BLANK:** Specifies that the *comment* line is blank.

'comment-line': Specifies the contents of the *comment* line. This line can be up to 40 characters, enclosed in apostrophes.

FAXD

Specifies the fax description name that the fax controller uses to send the fax.

***ANY:** Specifies that any fax controller can be used to send the fax.

fax-description: Specifies the fax description name of the fax controller that is used to send the fax.

- If the fax description does not exist, fax support does not process the command.
- If one of the following is true and the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product processes a fax, fax support sends a message that indicates that the SND FAX command failed.
 - The fax controller that is associated with this fax description is not active
 - All the cards or ports in the specified fax controller are configured to only receive inbound faxes

MSGQ

Specifies the qualified name of a user message queue to which fax support sends completion messages for this SND FAX command. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product creates this message queue if it does not exist when the first message is sent to the queue. Completion messages are sent to indicate the following conditions:

- The specified spooled file cannot be converted to fax format. In this case, fax support sends a single completion message to this message queue. This message indicates that the SND FAX command failed.
- The specified spooled file is successfully converted to fax format. In this case, fax support sends a completion message to this message queue for each telephone number specified in the TO parameter. The completion message indicates whether the telephone call was successful or not. In addition, fax support sends a SND FAX command completion message to this queue after the last call completion message.

In addition to messages that are sent to this queue, fax support sends completion messages to the QFAXOPR message queue. These messages indicate the following unsuccessful SND FAX conditions:

- If the specified spooled file cannot be converted to fax format, fax support sends a single completion message to the QFAXOPR message queue. This message indicates that the SND FAX command failed.

SNDFAX

- If fax support can successfully convert the specified spooled file to fax format, it sends a completion message to the QFAXOPR message queue for each telephone call that failed. In addition, fax support sends an unsuccessful SNDFAX command completion message to the QFAXOPR message queue after the last call completion message.

***NONE:** Specifies that fax support sends no completion messages to a user message queue. Unsuccessful completion messages are sent only to the QFAXOPR message queue.

Possible library name values are:

***CURLIB:** The user message queue resides in the current library of the job submitting the SNDFAX command.

library-name: The name of the library where the user message queue resides.

message-queue-name: The name of the message queue to which fax support sends the completion messages.

FAXSNDDQ

Specifies the qualified name of a data queue to which fax support sends completion messages for this SNDFAX command. If it does not exist, fax support creates this data queue when the first message is sent to the queue. Completion messages indicate the following conditions:

- If the specified spooled file cannot be converted to fax format, a single completion message is sent to this data queue. This message indicates that the SNDFAX command failed.
- If the specified spooled file is successfully converted to fax format, a completion message is sent to this data queue for each telephone number specified in the TO parameter. This completion message indicates whether the telephone call was successful or unsuccessful. In addition, fax support sends a SNDFAX command completion message to this queue after the last call completion message.

“Chapter 7. Send and Receive Fax Data Queue Message Format” on page 67 describes the format of the data queue messages.

***NONE:** Specifies that fax support sends no completion messages to a data queue.

Possible library name values are:

***CURLIB:** The data queue resides in the current library of the job submitting the SNDFAX command.

library-name: The name of the library where the data queue resides.

data-queue-name: The name of the data queue to which fax support sends the completion messages.

Note: If you use the send data queue, do not allow large numbers of messages to accumulate on the data queue. Removing messages that have accumulated on the queue does not reduce the queue size. (The queue size is the storage that is allocated to the queue.) After you process all of the messages from the queue, delete the queue. The next time the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product needs the queue, it creates one at a smaller initial size.

SNDTIME

Specifies the time when the outbound fax is to be sent.

***CURRENT:** Specifies that fax support should send the fax at the current time, if an outbound fax line is available. If a line is not available (all outbound lines are in use), fax support sends the fax as soon as an outbound fax line becomes available.

send-time: Specifies the time when the fax is scheduled to be sent. Fax support sends the outbound fax as soon after the specified time as an outbound fax line becomes available. Specify the send time in 24-hour format, with or without a time separator, as follows:

- Without a time separator, specify a string of 4 or 6 digits (hhmm or hhmmss; where hh = hours, mm = minutes, and ss = seconds). Hours, minutes, and seconds must each be exactly 2 digits (use leading zeros if necessary).
- With a time separator, specify a string of 5 or 8 digits where the time separator specified for your job is used to separate the hours, minutes, and seconds. If you enter this command from the command line, the string must be enclosed in apostrophes. If a time separator other than the separator you specified for your job is used, this command fails.

SNDDATE

Specifies the date when the outbound fax is scheduled to be sent. The fax is scheduled to be sent on this date at the time that the SNDTIME parameter specifies.

***CURRENT:** Specifies that the fax is scheduled to be sent on the current day.

send-date: Specifies the date when the fax is scheduled to be sent. The date must be entered in the format specified by the system value QDATFMT. When the optional date separator is used, it must be the separator character that the system value QDATSEP specifies. If the separator character is entered, the date must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

To determine the date separator character and the date format, use the Display Job (DSPJOB) command. Specify the option *DFNA to display the definition attributes for the user's job description.

TRANSFORM

Specifies the option of using Host Print Transform or the OS/400 spool support to process the spooled file on the SNDFAX command.

Note: Any user who has *CHANGE authority to the SNDFAX command can change the default for TRANSFORM. If you are using a GammaLink adapter in an external controller, do not use Transform *YES.

***NO:** The OS/400 spool support is used to process the spooled file.

***YES:** Host Print Transform is used to process the spooled file.

USRDFNFLD1

Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request. This user-defined field provides additional information to allow users to locate specific fax transmission information. This additional information appears in the fax transaction log and in the send fax data queue, if specified on the FAXSNDDQ parameter.

SNDFAX

***BLANK** No information exists for the user-defined field.

user-defined-data: Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request.

USRDFNFLD2

Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request. The user-defined field provides additional information to allow users to locate specific fax transmission information. This additional information appears in the fax transaction log and in the send fax data queue, if specified on the FAXSNDDQ parameter.

***BLANK** No information exists for the user-defined field.

user-defined-data: Specify up to 20 characters of information to associate with this fax request.

Examples

The examples that follow show different uses of the SNDFAX command.

Example 1

The command that follows specifies:

- The contents of the spooled file FAXFILE is to be sent to the telephone number 7771234.
- The spooled file FAXFILE is the only spooled file with that name in the job (*ONLY is the default for the SPLNBR parameter; and *, the current job, is the default for the JOB parameter).
- Fine mode is used to send the fax (*FINE is the default for the MODE parameter).
- No cover page is created for the fax (*NO is the default for the CRTCVRP parameter).
- The fax is to be sent as soon as an outbound fax line is available (*CURRENT is the default for the SNDTIME and SNDDATE parameters).
- Completion messages are not sent to a user message queue or data queue.

```
SNDFAX TO((7771234)) FILE(FAXFILE)
```

Example 2

The command that follows specifies:

- The contents of the spooled file SNDFAX is to be sent to the telephone number 7771234.
- The spooled file SNDFAX is the only spooled file with that name produced by the job named 623456/FAXUSER/DSP01 (*ONLY is the default for the SPLNBR parameter).

When the job number of the spooled file to be sent is not the same as the current user sign on, you must fully qualify the JOB parameter.

- Normal mode is used to send the fax.
- No cover page is created for the fax (*NO is the default for the CRTCVRP parameter).
- The fax is to be sent at 14:30 (2:30 p.m.) on the current day.

- Completion messages are sent to user message queue SNDMSGQ that is located in the SNDLIB library.
- Completion messages are not sent to a data queue.

```
SNDFAX TO((7771234)) FILE(SNDFAX) JOB(623456/FAXUSER/DSP01)
MODE(*NORMAL) SNDTIME('14:30') MSGQ(SNDLIB/SNDMSGQ)
```

Example 3

The command that follows specifies:

- The contents of the spooled file OUTFILE is to be sent to the telephone number 9997771234.
- The spooled file OUTFILE, which is the only spooled file with that name in the job (*ONLY is the default for the SPLNBR parameter; and *, the current job, is the default for the JOB parameter).
- Fine mode is used to send the fax (*FINE is the default for the MODE parameter).
- A cover page is created from the information that you specified on the command. The default cover page printer file QPFFCVP in the QFAX library is used.
- The fax is to be sent as soon as an outbound fax line is available (*CURRENT is the default for the SNDTIME and SNDDATE parameters).
- Completion messages are not sent to the user message queue.
- Completion messages are sent to data queue SNDDQ that is located in the SNDLIB library.

```
SNDFAX TO((9997771234 'Fax User' 'Any Company'
' Any Place, USA')) FILE(OUTFILE) CRTCVRP(*YES)
TITLE('Fax Usage') FROM('My Fax' 'My Company')
FAXSNDDQ(SNDLIB/SNDDQ)
```

Example 4

The command that follows specifies:

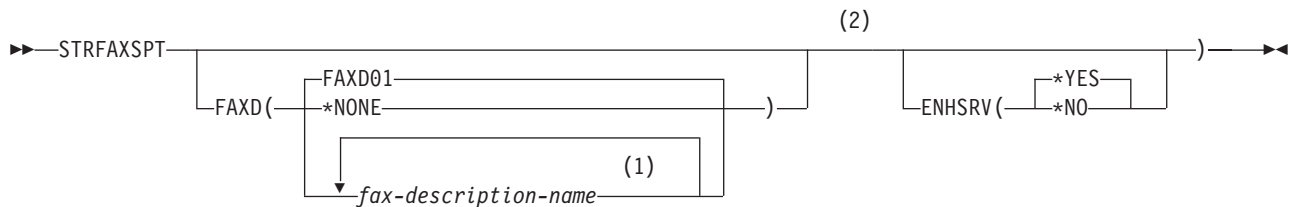
- The contents of the spooled file OUTFILE is to be sent to telephone number 7771234.
- The spooled file OUTFILE, which is the only spooled file with that name in the job (*ONLY is the default for the SPLNBR parameter; and *, the current job, is the default for the JOB parameter).
- Fine mode is used to send the fax (*FINE is the default for the MODE parameter).
- No cover page is created to the fax (*NO is the default for the CRTCVRP parameter).
- The fax is to be sent from the fax controller that is described as FAXD01.
- The fax is to be sent as soon as an outbound fax line is available (*CURRENT is the default for the SNDTIME and SNDDATE parameters).
- Completion messages are not sent to a user message queue or data queue.

```
SNDFAX TO((7771234)) FILE(OUTFILE) FAXD(FAXD01)
```

STRFAXSPT

STRFAXSPT (Start Fax Support) Command

Job: B,I Pgm: B,I REXX: B,I Exec



Notes:

1. A maximum of 20 repetitions positionally.
2. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command starts the following:

- The QFAXSBS subsystem
- Facsimile Support for AS/400 jobs
- The jobs associated with each fax description name
- The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product in each fax controller

When the QFAXSBS subsystem is active, the command starts the jobs associated with each fax description name, and the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product in each fax controller. APPC controllers and devices that are specified in the fax descriptions are varied on so they can be allocated to the jobs running in the fax subsystem.

If you use this command to start Enhanced Services, the QFQSBS subsystem and jobs that are associated with Enhanced Services are also started.

You can enter the STRFAXSPT command more than once without ever having to enter the End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command. For example, if you initially started the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product without starting Enhanced Services, you could use the STRFAXSPT command again to start Enhanced Services.

Note: In prior versions of the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, *NO was the default for the Enhanced Services (ENHSRV) parameter. You should be aware that this is changed for Version 4 Release 2 Modification 0 of this product.

Restrictions

- You must have *JOBCTL special authority to use the STRFAXSPT command.
- You must have object operational and update data authority to the QAFFCFG fax configuration file in the QUSRSYS library.
- The fax description you specify must not be already started.
- To start Enhanced Services, you must be a fax administrator.

Parameters

FAXD

The names of the fax descriptions that are to be used when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is started. These fax descriptions identify the devices the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is to use.

FAXD01: The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product uses the fax description, FAXD01.

***NONE:** No fax description is used when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is started. If you specify *NONE, you must specify *YES for the ENHSRV parameter.

fax-description-name: The names of the fax descriptions to be used by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. You can specify a maximum of 20 fax description names.

ENHSRV

Specifies whether or not to start Enhanced Services when the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product is started.

***YES:** Enhanced Services is to be started.

***NO:** Enhanced Services is not to be started.

Examples

Example 1

The command that follows uses the default fax description that is named FAXD01 to start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. The APPC controller description and the device descriptions that are specified in the FAXD01 fax description are varied on. Enhanced Services is started.

```
STRFAXSPT
```

Example 2

The command that follows uses the fax descriptions named FAXD01 and FAX9 to start the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. The APPC controller descriptions and the device descriptions that are specified in the FAXD01 and FAX9 fax descriptions are varied on.

```
STRFAXSPT FAXD(FAXD01 FAX9)
```

Example 3

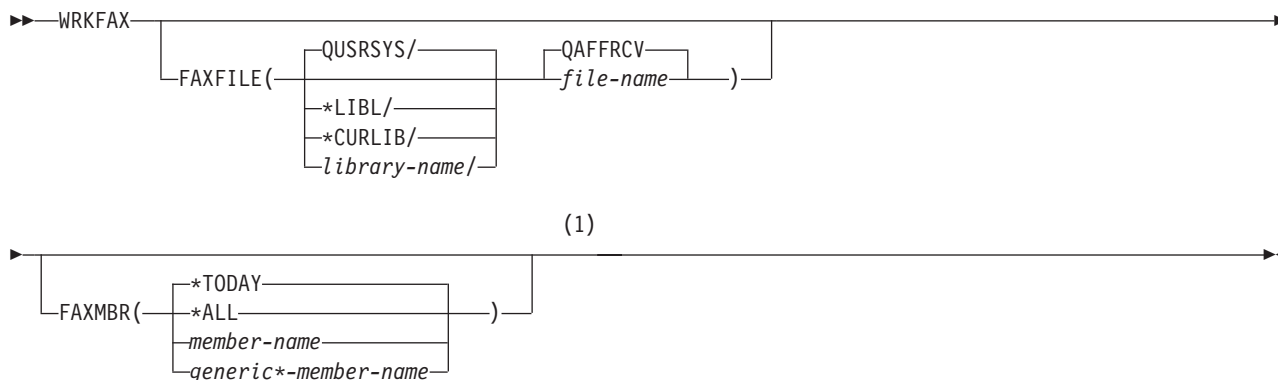
The following command starts only Enhanced Services.

```
STRFAXSPT FAXD(*NONE) ENHSRV(*YES)
```

WRKFAX

WRKFAX (Work with Faxes) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec



Notes:

1. All parameters preceding this point can be specified positionally.

Purpose

The Work with Faxes (WRKFAX) command shows a list of inbound faxes. From the list, you can file, delete, print, and change the descriptions of faxes.

Restrictions

- Only libraries to which you have *USE authority are searched.
- Database file members are listed only if you have authority to the database file that you specify when you run the command.
- To perform operations on the database file members, you must have *USE authority to the command that is used by the operation. You must also have the appropriate authority to the database file on which the operation is to be performed.

Parameters

FAXFILE

Specifies the qualified name of the database file that contains the fax members to be listed on the Work with Faxes display.

Possible library name values are:

QUSRSYS: The database file is located in the QUSRSYS library.

***LIBL:** The library list is used to locate the database file.

***CURLIB:** The current library is used to locate the database file that contains the faxes.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library where the database file that contains the faxes is located.

Possible file name values are:

QAFFRCV: The database file QAFFRCV contains the faxes. This is the default file used by the receive fax function.

file-name: Specifies the name of the database file that contains the faxes to be listed.

FAXMBR

Specifies the names of the database file members to be listed.

***TODAY:** Lists only the database file members that have arrived today.

Note: The default member names that are assigned as the faxes arrive determine the selection of today's arrivals. Renaming the members may affect whether the Work with Faxes display lists them.

***ALL:** Lists all database file members.

member-name: Specifies the name of the database file member to be listed.

generic-member-name*: Specifies the generic name of the database file members to be listed. A generic name is a character string that contains one or more characters, followed by an asterisk (*). For example, F212*.

Example

The following command lists all database file members in the default fax file QAFFRCV:

```
WRKFAX FAXMBR(*ALL)
```

WRKFAXDST (Work with Fax Distribution List) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

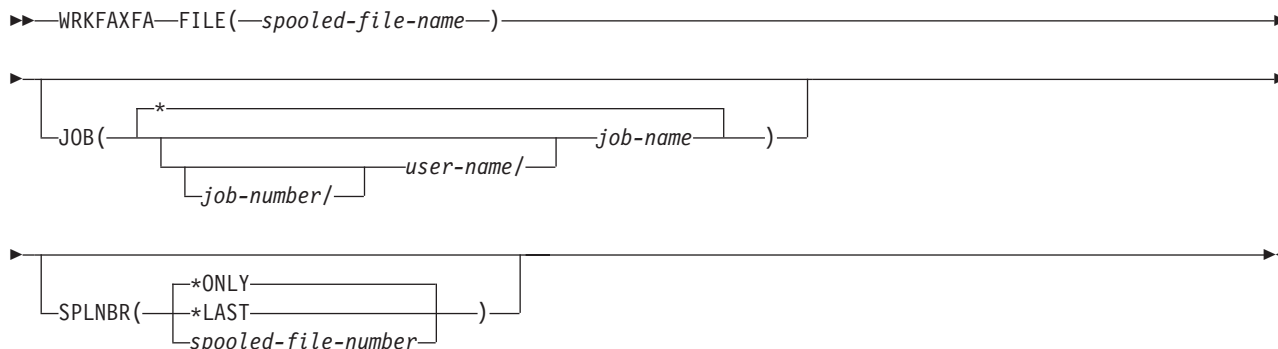
▶▶—WRKFAXDST—◀◀

Purpose

The Work with Fax Distribution (WRKFAXDST) command presents the Work with Fax Distribution Lists display. From this display, you can create, delete, rename, and work with the entries of a distribution list. You can also change authority to a distribution list. You must have a fax profile to use this command. There are no parameters for this command.

WRKFAXFA (Work with Fax File Attributes) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec



Purpose

The Work with Fax File Attributes (WRKFAXFA) command allows you to work with the current attributes of the specified spooled file. You can work with the attributes after the file is opened and while its file entry is still on the output queue. Specify the name of the spooled file.

Restrictions

On the WRKFAXFA command, you can specify only spooled files that contain faxes on the output queue QFFSNDFAX located in the QUSRSYS library.

Required Parameter

FILE

Specifies the name of the spooled file that contains the attributes to be shown.

Optional Parameters

JOB

Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file containing the fax.

*****: The job that submitted this WRKFAXFA command is the job that created the spooled file.

job-name: Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file. You can specify either a simple or a qualified job name. If you specify a simple job name (without qualifiers), all of the jobs currently in the system are searched for that simple job name.

If duplicate job names are found, all of the duplicate names are displayed in the qualified form. You can then specify a fully qualified job name.

Specify a qualified job name in the format *job-number/user-name/job-name*.

job-number: The unique 6-digit number that is assigned to each job by the system.

user-name: The name of the user profile under which the job was run. The user name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

job-name: The simple (unqualified) name of the job. The job name can contain a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)* .

SPLNBR

Specifies the number of the spooled file that contains the fax attributes to be shown. You must specify a value other than *ONLY when the job creates more than one spooled file, and the files have the same file name.

***ONLY**: Specifies that only one spooled file from the job has the specified file name. Therefore, the spooled file number is not required.

***LAST**: Specifies that the spooled file with the highest number is the file that contains the fax attributes to be shown.

spooled-file-number: Specifies the number of the spooled file that has the specified file name and contains the fax attributes to be shown.

For an expanded description of this parameter, see the *CL Reference (Abridged)*.

WRKFAXMST (Work with Fax Master List) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

▶▶—WRKFAXMST—◀◀

Purpose

The Work with Fax Master List (WRKFAXMST) command presents the Work with Fax Master List display. From this display, you can edit, remove, display, change authority to, and create entries in the fax master list. You must have a fax profile to use this command. There are no parameters for this command. For security considerations for this command, see “Chapter 5. Enhanced Services Security” on page 55.

WRKFAXPRF (Work with Fax Profiles) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

▶▶—WRKFAXPRF—◀◀

Purpose

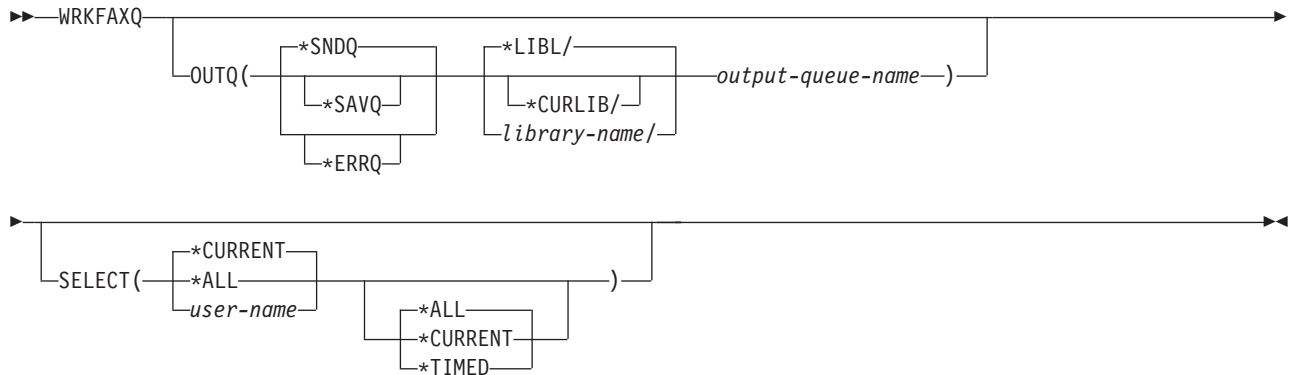
The Work with Fax Profiles (WRKFAXPRF) command presents the Work With Fax Profiles display. From this display, you can create, copy, change, delete, display, or print your fax profile. You can also grant other users authority to access your outbound faxes. You can also create routing entries for the fax profile’s routing code. There are no parameters for this command.

WRKFAXPRF

The fax user profile contains information that is used in processing fax transmissions for a specified user. You must be a fax administrator to work with another user's fax profile.

WRKFAXQ (Work with Fax Output Queue) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec



Purpose

The Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ) command shows a list of spooled files and the file status for any output queue.

Restrictions

- Only libraries to which you have *USE authority are searched.
- To perform operations on the spooled file, you must have *USE authority to the command that the operation uses.

Optional Parameters

OUTQ

Specifies the qualified name of the output queue that contains the spooled files to be shown on the Work with Fax Output Queue display.

Possible output queue values are:

***SNDQ:** Shows the list of spooled files on the output queue QFFSNDFAX located in library QUSRSYS. This list shows faxes that are waiting to be sent.

***SAVQ:** Shows the list of spooled files on the output queue QFFSNDSAV located in library QUSRSYS. This list shows faxes that were saved after being sent.

***ERRQ:** Shows the list of spooled files on the output queue QFFSNDEERR located in library QUSRSYS. This list shows faxes that were not successfully sent.

Possible library name values are:

***LIBL:** The library list is used to locate the output queue.

***CURLIB:** The current library is used to locate the output queue. If you did not specify a current library for the job, the QGPL library is used.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library in which the output queue is located.

output-queue-name: Shows the name of the output queue for the list of spooled files.

SELECT

Specifies which group of spooled files from a particular output queue should be shown. You can specify the following positional values to select the spooled files:

- The user that created the file
- The user data tag associated with the file

Only files on the specific output queue that meet each of the requirements are selected.

Element 1: User Values

***CURRENT**: Selects only spooled files that were created by the user who runs this command.

***ALL**: Selects spooled files created by all users.

user-name: Specifies the user who created the spooled files being selected.

Element 2: User Data Values

***ALL**: Selects spooled files specified with any user data tag.

***CURRENT**: Selects only spooled files with a user data tag of *CURRENT.

***TIMED**: Selects only spooled files with a user data tag of *TIMED.

WRKRCVFAX (Work with Received Faxes) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

```

▶▶ WRKRCVFAX—RCVDATE—( 
                        
                         )—RCVTIME—( 
                         )—▶▶
  
```

Purpose

The Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX) command presents the Work with Received Faxes display. From this display, you can file, remove, resend, print, view received faxes, work with log entries, send notifications, and run a receive program.

To use this command, you must have a fax profile.

The data shown on the WRKRCVFAX display is based on the receive data queue (RCVDQ) parameter specified on the Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV) command.

WRKRCVFAX

Parameters

RCVDATE

To limit the faxes you want to work with, specify the date they were received.

***ALL:** Selects all received faxes.

***CURRENT:** Selects only the faxes that are received today.

receive-date: Selects only the faxes that are received on the specified date. You must enter the date in the format that is specified by the system value QDATFMT. When optional date separators are used, they must be enclosed in apostrophes (for example, 'mm/dd/yy').

RCVTIME

To limit the faxes you want to work with, specify the time that the earliest of these faxes was received.

***ALL:** Selects all times.

receive-time: Specify a time of day. This selects faxes that are received at the specified time or later. Enter the time in a 24-hour format, with or without separators.

WRKTSIRTG (Work with TSI Routing) Command

Job: | Pgm: | REXX: | Exec

▶▶—WRKTSIRTG—◀◀

Purpose

The Work with Transmitting Subscriber Identification (TSI) Routing (WRKTSIRTG) command presents the Work with TSI Routing display. From this display, you can set up routing entries for automatic routing of inbound faxes. You can create, change, or delete TSI routing entries. To use this command, you must have a fax profile. There are no parameters for this command.

Part 3. Appendixes

Appendix A. Integrated Fax Adapter Return Codes

This appendix provides a list of primary (Detail-1) and secondary (Detail-2) return codes that the Integrated Fax Adapter might return. These detailed codes appear in the QFAXOPR message queue and in the system error log. Fax messages in the following form sometimes include some of these return codes:

FAXCxxxx

The explanations for some of these return codes may be useful to the user. However, many of these codes are intended for the system operator or for service personnel, and are very technical in nature.

Table 12. Error Codes (Primary and Detail)

Primary	Detail-1	Detail-2	Description
0x0000			Normal Status (no details)
0x0002			The port is currently busy performing a send function
	0x0000	0x0001	The telephone is ringing; must switch to receive
0x0005			There is a problem with send control record
	0x0000	0x0000	There is a format error in the telephone number.
	0x0001	0xn timer	There is a page count conflict; nnnn=actual pages spooled
0x0007			The send parameter for the modem manager is not valid
	0x0010	0x1000	There is no page count
		0x1001	The resolution value is not valid
		0x1002	The width value is not valid
		0x1003	The telephone number is missing
		0x1004	The dial type value is not valid
		0x1005	The error correction mode selection parameter is not valid
		0x100F	No send or receive was enabled for this port
0x0010			A port time-out condition was detected
	0xFF18	0x1800	The call was not answered within the time-out period
0x0011			The attempted telephone number was busy
	0xFF16	0x1600	A busy tone was detected while making the call
0x0015			An out-of-storage condition occurred during a receive operation
	0x0001	0x0001	There is not enough storage to hold the received data
0x0016			The remote fax machine reported an error
	0xFF00	0xFF00	The remote fax machine reported an error
0x0017			An unexpected error was detected when call was requested
	0xFF16	0x1601	A ring tone was detected while the telephone was off the hook
0x0018			An unexpected return code was received from a DOS call
	0xn timer	0xr timer	The error return code is 'rrrr' at code point 'nnnn'
0x0019			The Transmitting Subscriber Identification or Called Subscriber Identification received from a remote fax machine is not valid

Table 12. Error Codes (Primary and Detail) (continued)

Primary	Detail-1	Detail-2	Description
	0x0000	0x0000	The Called Subscriber Identification received is not valid
		0x0001	The Transmitting Subscriber Identification received is not valid
0x0020			The Fax Manager failed
	0xFF50	0xn timer	There was a Fax Manager error at code point 'nnnn'
	0xFF51	0x0000	Conversion of the received image failed
0x0021			A communication error was detected during G3 protocol processing
	0x0000	0x0050	There is no G3 response. The caller may not be a fax machine
	0x0015	0x00nn	There was a bad response to the G3 command during the send operation; nn = response
	0x0025	0x00nn	There was a bad response to the G3 command during the receive operation; nn = response
	0xFF02	0x0222	The maximum number of image errors has been exceeded
	0xFF04	0x04nn	There was a disconnect response to the End of Retransmission; the last Partial Page Signal command sent = nn
	0xFF05	0x05nn	There is no response to the End of Retransmission; the last Partial Page Segment command sent = nn
	0xFF06	0x06nn	There is no response to the Partial Page Segment command; the last command sent = nn
	0xFF07	0x07nn	There was an unexpected Disconnect response; the last Partial Page Segment command sent = nn
	0xFF08	0x08nn	There was an unexpected Disconnect response; the last command sent = nn
	0xFF09	0x0901	A Disconnect was received when a Digital Identification Signal was expected
		0x0902	A disconnect response was sent to training
		0x0903	A Disconnect response to a Multipage Signal was received
		0x0904	A Disconnect response to an End of Page was received
		0x0905	A Disconnect response to a Digital Command Signal was received
		0x0908	A Disconnect response to an End of Message was received
		0x0909	A Disconnect response to a Receive Ready was received
		0x090A	A Disconnect response to a Procedure Interrupt was received
		0x090B	A Disconnect response to a Receive Not Ready was received
		0x090C	A disconnect response to a Continue to Correct was received
	0xFF10	0x1001	There was no response to the third send training
		0x1002	The third request for retraining was received
		0x1003	There was no response to the third Multipage Signal
		0x1004	There was no response to the third End of Page
		0x1005	There was no response to the third End of Message
		0x1006	There was no response to the third Receive Ready

Table 12. Error Codes (Primary and Detail) (continued)

Primary	Detail-1	Detail-2	Description
		0x1007	There was no response to the third Continue to Correct
	0xFF11	0x1104	A procedural interrupt (positive or negative) was received
		0x1106	There was a Phase B failure to train at the lowest baud rate
		0x1114	Remote modem communication speed is not compatible for data transmission
		0x1120	A return was received on a send retry
		0x1150	An End of Retransmission error was received during Phase C under error correction mode at the lowest baud
	0xFF12	0x1202	There was a frame receive failure during the retry under error correction mode
		0x1204	No image line was received after the Confirmation to Receive
		0x1205	T2 modulation expired while waiting on a command
		0x1206	The remote machine was busy for more than 60 seconds
		0x1208	No Receive Ready response was received
		0x1211	No Nonstandard Facilities Setup or Digital Command Signal was received
		0x1215	No Return to Control post message was received
		0x1220	A line error occurred when 5KB of data failed to supply a valid scan line
		0x1221	A line error that occurred in the first 10KB of data failed to supply a valid scan line
		0x1250	An End of Retransmission was received during an error correction mode image exchange
		0x1255	A multi-document receive request was rejected
	0xFF13	0x1300	The telephone connection was unexpectedly dropped during communication
	0xFF14	0x14nn	T2 expired while waiting on a command; the last command sent = nn
	0xFF20	0xFFFn	There was a send conversion error (Modified Modified Read to Modified Read or MH)
		0xFFF1	There was a run end to Modified Read or Modified Huffman in error correction mode
		0xFFF2	There was a run end to Modified Read or Modified Huffman
		0xFFF5	There was a Modified Modified Read to run end in error correction mode
		0xFFF6	There was a Modified Modified Read to run end
	0xFF21	0xFFFn	There was a receive conversion error (Modified Read or Modified Huffman to Modified Modified Read)
		0xFFF1	There was a run end to a Modified Modified Read in error correction mode
		0xFFF2	There was a run end to a Modified Modified Read
		0xFFF5	There was a Modified Read or Modified Huffman to run end in error correction mode
		0xFFF6	There was a Modified Read or Modified Huffman to run end

Table 12. Error Codes (Primary and Detail) (continued)

Primary	Detail-1	Detail-2	Description
	0xFF22	0xnxxx	A serial error occurred during a T4 message receive; nxxx = error
	0xFF23	0x2300	A page was rejected due to poor quality
		0x2301	A page was rejected because no line was received
		0x2302	A page was rejected because there was no room in the receive queue
		0x23FF	The Integrated Fax Adapter sent an RTN because of poor quality, but kept the page
	0xFF24	0x2401	An abort was received while sending a T4 data stream
		0x2402	A serial error occurred while sending a T4 message
	0xFF25	0x2500	The message carrier was lost and then detected again while not in error correction mode
	0xFF42	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to end training (Return to Control)
	0xFF43	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a modem FRM command
	0xFF44	0xnxxx	there was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a modem FTM command
	0xFF45	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a modem FRH command
	0xFF46	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a modem FTH command
	0xFF47	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a modem FTS command
	0xFF48	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected modem response, nxxx, to a High-Level Data Link Control command
	0xFF49	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to end training (Training Check)
	0xFF50	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a Facsimile Coded Data frame
	0xFF51	0xnxxx	There was an unexpected response, nxxx, to a Return to Control for Partial Page frame
0x0022			The remote station is not a fax machine
	0xFF11	0x1110	No carrier was detected after the call was answered
		0x1113	A Nonstandard Facilities Setup or Digital Identification Signal cannot be received
		0x1184	CED not received within time-out
0x0023			There was a code failure in the modem manager
	0xFF40	0xnxxx	The modem manager failed at code point nxxx
	0xFF41	0x4101	A receive file handle is not valid on an open operation
		0x4102	An error occurred while writing to the receive file
		0x4103	The receive file handle is not valid
		0x4104	The receive file handle is not valid on a close operation
		0x4110	There was an unexpected Seek-to-0 error

Table 12. Error Codes (Primary and Detail) (continued)

Primary	Detail-1	Detail-2	Description
		0x4111	An error occurred while reading a send file
		0x4112	A send file handle is not valid on a close operation
		0x4113	A send file handle is not valid on an open operation
		0x4180	All modems failed the basic I/O tests
		0x4181	Modem port A failed the basic I/O tests
		0x4182	Modem port B failed the basic I/O tests
	0xFF45	0xn timer	The Fax Modem Manager conversion was out of synchronization at location n timer
0x0024			The Modem port hardware or Licensed Internal Code failed
	0x000p	0xn timer	Port p failed at code point = n timer
	0xFF0p	0x1000	An error was found in the Country table data while updating port P
0x0027			A permanent error was detected while attempting an outgoing call
	0x000p	0x40FF	A coupler is missing on port P
	0x000p	0x4000	The coupler on port P is not valid
	0x0002	0x0000	No dial tone was detected
	0x0005	0x0000	The blacklist table is full
0x00028			Calls are not valid
	0x0001	0x0001	There was an insufficient delay between calls to this number
		0x0003	No second dial tone was detected
	0x0002	0x0000	The number is blacklisted
	0x0005	0x0000	The number is in use by another port
0x0030			The received task page queue limit was reached
	0x000p	0x00nn	The queue is full for port P; the number of pages = nn

Appendix B. Bar Codes Supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product

You may want to include bar codes in your outbound faxes. The Facsimile Support for AS/400 product supports the following bar codes:

Table 13. Bar Codes Supported by the Facsimile Support for AS/400 Product

Bar code Type	Description
Code 39	Code 3 of 9
MSI	Modified Plessey code
UPC_A	UPC/CGPC version A
UPC_E	UPC/CGPC version E
UPC_2	UPC 2-digit supplemental
UPC_5	UPC 5-digit supplemental
EAN_8	EAN-8
EAN_13	EAN-13
IND2OF5	Industrial 2 of 5
MAT2OF5	Matrix 2 of 5
INT2OF5	Interleaved 2 of 5
codabar	Codabar
EAN_2	EAN 2-digit supplemental
EAN_5	EAN 5-digit supplemental

Bibliography

The following publications may be useful to you when you install and use the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product. These publications appear with their full title and base order number.

- *CL Programming*, SC41-5721-02 provides a wide range of information on programming topics.
- *Communications Configuration*, SC41-5401-00 describes the control language syntax, commands, and command parameters.
- *Communications Configuration*, SC41-5401-00 provides information on how to configure the communications functions that are available with the OS/400 licensed program.
- *Data Management*, SC41-5710-00 provides information about spooling, spooled files, and output queues.
- *DDS Reference*, SC41-5712-01 provides instructions for coding the data description specifications (DDS) for files that you want externally described.
- *AS/400 Licensed Internal Code Diagnostic Aids - Volume 1*, LY44-5900-02 and *AS/400 Licensed Internal Code Diagnostic Aids - Volume 2*, LY44-5901-02 provide information about error logs, dumps, traces, and other service tools and procedures needed to determine, isolate, and solve programming problems.
- *Facsimile Support for AS/400 Installation Guide*, SC41-0654, provides information on installing the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product on the AS/400 system and external fax controllers, and information on configuring and customizing the product.
- *Facsimile Support for AS/400 User's Guide*, SC41-0655, provides information on how to use the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product.
- *Facsimile Support/400 Version 3 Redbook*, SG24-4636, provides detailed information for planning and installing the Facsimile Support for AS/400 product, as well as using this product with other products and applications.
- *FaxConcentrator Administrator's Guide*, S15F-2261, contains information about installing, using, and maintaining the FaxConcentrator Adapter/A card.
- *Getting Started with OfficeVision/400*, SH21-0732-00 contains basic information about the OfficeVision for AS/400 document processing functions.
- *Printer Device Programming*, SC41-5713-03 provides information to help you understand and control printing.
- *System Operation*, SC41-4203-00 provides information on general system operation topics, including the handling of messages and the installation of program temporary files.
- *Work Management*, SC41-5306-03 describes subsystems, job queues, output queues, job descriptions, and classes.

Index

Special Characters

- *GENERATE errors 90
- *GENERATE step 90
- *SNDFAX errors 90
- *SNDFAX step 90

Numerics

- 3489
 - InfoWindow II display 50
- 3816 printer 15
- 3825 printer 15
- 7852-400 modem
 - switching between fax and ECS 5

A

- adapter address
 - Ethernet card 138
 - token-ring card 138
 - universally administered address 138
- Add Fax Card (ADDFAXCRD) command
 - example 107
 - syntax 100
- Add Fax Distribution List Entry (ADDFAXDLE)
 - command 109
- adding fax cards 100
- administrator, fax 55
- advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) 6
- alignment
 - specification of 23
- APAR, preparing 85
- applications
 - integrating Enhanced Services features 41
 - interactive integration method 1 42
 - interactive integration method 2 44
- applying a program temporary fix (PTF) 86
- AS/400 information for APARs 86
- AS/400 system messages 71
- attributes, spooled file 23
- authority
 - command 173
 - distribution list 172
 - fax distribution list
 - creating 59
 - editing 59
 - Enhanced Services 58
 - entry, adding 58
 - entry, removing 59
 - granting 59
 - owner, changing 59
 - removing 59
 - working with 60
 - fax master list
 - granting 56
 - owner 56
 - working with 56

- authority (*continued*)
 - receive data queue 173
 - receive database file 34
 - received faxes 57
 - rules
 - fax distribution list commands 58
 - fax master list commands 56
 - outbound fax commands 60
 - submit fax 60
 - submitting faxes 57
 - tone routing 57
 - TSI routing 57, 58
- Authorized Program Analysis Report 85

B

- banner, TSI
 - appearance 139
 - printing 142
 - specifying 139
- batch fax requests 30

C

- centering received faxes 170
- Change Fax Distribution List Owner (CHGDSTOWN)
 - command 120
- Change Fax File Attributes (CHGFAXFA)
 - command 122
- Change Fax System Directory Attributes (CHGFAXSDA)
 - command 131
- Change Master List Entry Owner (CHGMLEOWN)
 - command 132
- Change Printer File (CHGPRTF) command 22
- changing attributes of fax spooled files 122
- changing fax system directory attributes 131
- changing textual description of inbound faxes 36
- Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command
 - for status of outbound faxes 87
 - syntax 133
- checking fax status 133
- CHGFAXFA command 125
- CL program
 - SBMORDB 47
 - SBMORDI 44, 46
- cleanup
 - system 84
- cleanup job
 - specifying on CFGFAXSRV command 112
 - starting 114
- clearing the QFAXOPR message queue 84
- command interface
 - SBMFAX command 7
 - SNDFAX command 7
- commands
 - ADDFAXCRD (Add Fax Card) 100
 - ADDFAXDLE (Add Fax Distribution List Entry) 109
 - authority rules for outbound faxes 60

commands (*continued*)

CFGFAXSRV (Configure Fax Services) 100
CHGDSTOWN (Change Fax Distribution List Owner) 120
CHGFAXFA (Change Fax File Attributes) 122
CHGFAXSDA (Change Fax System Directory Attributes) 131
CHGMLEOWN (Change Master List Entry Owner) 132
CHGPRTF (Change Printer File) 22
CHKFAXSTS (Check Fax Status) 87, 133
CRTCLPGM (Create CL Program) 52
CRTFAXD (Create Fax Description) 136
CRTFAXDST (Create Fax Distribution List) 143
CRTFAXMLE (Create Fax Master List Entry) 145
CRTFAXNOTE (Create Fax Note) 49, 148
CRTFAXPRF (Create Fax Profile) 154
CRTPRTF (Create Printer File) 22
CVTFAXDOC (Convert Fax Document) 155
DLTFAX (Delete Fax) 35, 157
DLTFAXD (Delete Fax Description) 158
DLTFAXF (Delete Fax File) 26, 160
DMPJOB (Dump Job) 86
DSPLIND (Display Line Description) 73
DSPMSGD (Display Message Description) 71
DSPNETA (Display Network Attributes) 73
DSPPTF (Display Program Temporary Fix) 86
DSPSPLF (Display Spooled File) 26
EDTFAXDST (Edit Fax Distribution List) 165
EDTFAXPRF (Edit Fax Profile) 165
ENDFAXSPT (End Fax Support) 166
FILFAX (File Fax) 35, 168
GRTDSTAUT (Grant Fax Distribution List Authority) 172
GRTMLEAUT (Grant Master List Entry Authority) 173
HLDSPFL (Hold Spooled File) 26
OVRPRTF (Override with Printer File) 22
PCO (PC Organizer) 53
PRTAFPDTA (Print Advanced Function Printer Data) 15
PRTDOC (Print Document) 15
PRTFAX (Print Fax) 35, 175
PRTFAXCFG (Print Fax Configuration) 179
PRTFAXSTS (Print Fax Status) 181
RLSSPLF (Release Spooled File) 26
RMVFAXCRD (Remove Fax Card) 184
RMVFAXDLE (Remove Fax Distribution List Entry) 185
RMVFAXDST (Remove Fax Distribution List) 186
RMVFAXMLE (Remove Fax Master List Entry) 187
SBMFAX (Submit Fax) 30, 189
SNDFAX (Send Fax) 198
STARTPCS (Start Client Access) 53
STRFAXSPT (Start Fax Support) 208
STRPCCMD (Start PC Command) 51
STRSRVJOB (Start Service Job) 86
WRKCFGSTS (Work with Configuration Status) 92
WRKFAX (Work with Faxes) 36, 210
WRKFAXDST (Work with Fax Distribution List) 211
WRKFAXFA (Work with Fax File Attributes) 212

commands (*continued*)

WRKFAXMST (Work with Fax Master List) 100
WRKFAXPRF (Work with Fax Profiles) 213
WRKFAXQ (Work with Fax Output Queue) 26, 214
WRKRCVFAX (Work with Received Faxes) 87, 215
WRKTSIRTG (Work with TSI Routing) 216
communications
ECS 5
fax 5
configuration
LAN problems 72
twinaxial, problems 76
Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV) command 111
configuring Enhanced Services 111
connection types
Ethernet LAN 4
for external fax controllers 4
Token-ring LAN 4
twinaxial 4
control code 199
control codes
on CHGFAXFA command 125
on SNDFAX command 199
controller
external 4
information for APARs 86
internal 4
messages 72
types supported 4
Convert Fax Document (CVTFAXDOC) command 155
copies
number to be printed 176
spooled file attribute 23
cover page
attribute 127
creating your own 17, 20
customized 18
default format 17
description 17
name 127
outbound fax 15
overlays on 20
printer file 202
SNDFAX command 202
Create CL Program (CRTCLPGM) command 52
Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command 136
Create Fax Distribution List (CRTFAXDST) command 143
Create Fax Master List Entry (CRTFAXMLE) command 145
program to call 41
Create Fax Note (CRTFAXNOTE) command 49, 148
Create Fax Profile (CRTFAXPRF) command 154
Create Printer File (CRTPRTF) command 22
creating
CL program SBMORDI 44
distribution list 143
fax note 148
fax profile 154
creating a cover page 17, 20

- creating an overlay
 - from OS/2 or Windows applications 21
- creating entries
 - in Fax Master List 145
- creating status messages 88
- creation flow
 - Method 1 42
 - Method 2 45
 - Method 3 47
- customer database layout 39

D

- data area, receive fax 48
- data queue
 - message format 67, 68
 - QFFRCVDQ 34
 - receive fax 33
 - send fax 67
- database file
 - QAFFRCV 33
- databases, creating 40
- default cover page format 17
- Delete Fax (DLTFAX)
 - command 157
 - running from WRKFAX 35
- Delete Fax Description (DLTFAXD) command 158
- Delete Fax File (DLTFAXF) command 26, 160
- deleting
 - fax descriptions 158
 - inbound faxes from a file 157
 - QFAXOPR message queue 84
 - received faxes 37
 - spooled files from fax output queues 160
- description 63
- dialing codes
 - on CHGFAXFA command 125
 - on SNDFAX command 199
- DIRCONTYP parameter 105
- display
 - InfoWindow II 3489 display 50
- Display Line Description (DSPLIND) command 73
- Display Message Description (DSPMSGD)
 - command 71
- Display Network Attributes (DSPNETA) command 73
- Display Program Temporary Fix (DSPPTF)
 - command 86
- Display Spooled File (DSPSPLF) command 26
- displays
 - Order Entry 43, 45
 - Work with Fax Distribution List 211
 - Work with Fax File Attributes 28
 - Work with Fax Master List 213
 - Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ) 25, 26
 - Work with Fax Profiles 213
 - Work with Faxes 35
 - Work with Received Facsimile 215
 - Work with TSI Routing 216
- distribution list
 - authority
 - create 59
 - edit 59

- distribution list (*continued*)
 - authority (*continued*)
 - Enhanced Services 59
 - granting 59
 - removing 59
 - removing entries 59
 - working with 60
 - changing name or description of 165
 - changing owner of 120
 - commands 58
 - creating 143
 - entry 58
 - granting authority to 172
 - master list entries, adding 109
 - owner 59
 - removing 186
 - removing entries from 185
 - working with 211
- document drawer selection, OfficeVision 23
- documents
 - converting 155
 - tab spaces in 81
- drawer
 - for size of fax page 23
 - specification 23
 - values for 23
- drawer, document
 - selecting 23
- Dump Job (DMPJOB) command 86

E

- ECM, ITU-T 105
- ECS
 - on 7852-400 modem 5
- Edit Fax Distribution List (EDTFAXDST) command 165
- Edit Fax Profile (EDTFAXPRF) command 165
- editing fax profiles 165
- Electronic Customer Support 5
- End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command 166
- ENDFAXSPT command, for system cleanup 84
- ENDSBS command considerations 84
- Enhanced Services
 - batch applications 47
 - business applications 41
 - configuring 111
 - interactive applications 42
 - problem analysis 87
- Enhanced Services Security 55
- environments, setting up workstation 53
- error messages
 - locating 87
- error messages, fax
 - logging sequence 84
- error reset status message 89
- errors, *GENERATE or *SNDFAX 90
- errors, OS/2 run-time 72
- errors occurred status message 89
- Ethernet
 - adapter address 138
 - LAN 4

examples

- Add Fax Distribution List Entry (ADDFAXDLE)
command 109
- Change Distribution List Owner (CHGDSTOWN)
command 121

Examples

- Change Fax File Attributes (CHGFAXFA)
command 131

examples

- Change Master List Owner (CHGMLEOWN)
command 133
- Check Fax Status (CHKFAXSTS) command 135
- Configure Fax Services (CFGFAXSRV)
command 120
- Convert Fax Document (CVTFAXDOC)
command 157
- Create Fax Description (CRTFAXD) command 140
- Create Fax Distribution List (CRTFAXDST)
command 144
- Create Fax Master List Entry (CRTFAXMLE)
command 147
- Create Fax Note (CRTFAXNOTE) command 153
- Create Fax Profile (CRTFAXPRF) command 154
- creating fax master list databases 40
- Delete Fax (DLTFAX) command 158
- Delete Fax Description (DLTFAXD) command 159
- Delete Fax File (DLTFAXF) command 162
- Edit Fax Distribution List (EDTFAXDST)
command 165
- End Fax Support (ENDFAXSPT) command 167
- File Fax (FILFAX) command 171
- Grant Distribution List Authority (GRTDSTAUT)
command 173
- Grant Master List Entry Authority (GRTMLEAUT)
command 174
- Print Fax (PRTFAX) command 177
- Print Fax Configuration (PRTFAXCFG)
command 180
- Print Fax Status (PRTFAXSTS) command 184
- program to call CRTFAXMLE 41
- Remove Fax Card (RMVFAXCRD) command 185
- Remove Fax Distribution List (RMVFAXDST)
command 187
- Remove Fax Distribution List Entry (RMVFAXDLE)
command 186
- Remove Fax Master List Entry (RMVFAXMLE)
command 188
- Send Fax (SNDFAX) command 206
- Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command 209
- Submit Fax (SBMFAX) command 197
- update flow 40
- Work with Fax File Attributes display 30
- Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ)
display 25
- Work with Faxes (WRKFAX) command 36
- working with received faxes 36

external fax controller

- trace 90

F

- F-Net 125, 200
- Facsimile Support for AS/400
 - commands 99
 - product overview 6
- Facsimile Support for AS/400 product
 - creation flow 42, 47
 - Enhanced Services Security 55
 - helpful hints 84
 - introduction 3
 - problem analysis 71
 - problems, LAN configuration 72
 - transaction log 13
- fax
 - administrator 55
 - authority to submit 60
 - controller information, for APARs 86
 - controller messages 72
 - cover page
 - creating 20
 - creation flow 45, 47
 - data queue message format 67
 - deleting from output queues 160
 - deleting received 37
 - file attributes 28
 - filing as documents in folders 36
 - filing received 36
 - inbound 33
 - inbound status 87
 - inbound support 33
 - master list
 - creating databases 40
 - security 56
 - updating 39
 - message file 71
 - message queue 71
 - messages 33, 71
 - operator message queue 16
 - outbound
 - commands, authority 60
 - description 15
 - working with 25
 - outbound, problems 88
 - outbound status 87
 - output, problems 81
 - printer device 24
 - printing received 37
 - printing TSI banner on 142
 - problems 72
 - problems, twinaxial configuration 76
 - programming considerations for 39
 - receive data area 48
 - receiving 9, 33
 - requests
 - batch 30
 - interactive 30
 - sending
 - cover page 17
 - outbound 15
 - procedure 7
 - WRKFAXQ command 26

- fax (*continued*)
 - sending, problems 55
 - service procedures 85
 - status
 - checking 60
 - status, resetting 89
 - submitting, WRKFAXQ command 26
 - transaction log
 - description 13
 - record format 63
 - working with 35
 - working with received 34
- fax cards, adding 100
- fax cards, removing 184
- fax communications
 - on 7852-400 modem 5
- fax configuration, OS/400 operating system, command 136
- fax configuration, printing 179
- fax controller
 - external
 - trace 90
- Fax controllers
 - 7852-400 modems as 4
- fax controllers
 - connection types 4
- Fax controllers
 - Integrated Fax Adapters as 4
 - personal computers as 4
 - types supported 4
- fax descriptions, deleting 158
- fax document
 - converting 155
- fax document, filing in a folder 168
- fax error messages
 - logging sequence 84
- fax flow through output queues 90
- fax master list
 - changing ownership of entries 132
- Fax Master List
 - creating entries in 145
- fax master list
 - granting authority 173
- fax note, creating 148
- fax profile, creating 154
- fax request
 - submitting 189
- fax requests, printing a report of 181
- fax status, checking 133
- fax writer queue
 - considerations 84
- faxes
 - authority for submitting 57
 - inbound
 - changing textual description of 36
- faxes, deleting received 170, 177
- faxes, printing 175
- field length 63
- field name 63
- file attributes 28
- File Fax (FILFAX) command 168

- File Fax (FILFAX) command 35 (*continued*)
 - display 35
 - running from WRKFAX 35
- filing received faxes 36
- folder, filing a fax document in 168
- folders
 - filing faxes in 36

G

- Grant Fax Distribution List Authority (GRTDSTAUT) command 172
- Grant Master List Entry Authority (GRTMLEAUT) command 173

H

- help, online 72
- helpful hints for Facsimile Support for AS/400 product 84
- HLL program 43, 46
- Hold Spooled File (HLDSPLF) command 26

I

- ICF (intersystem communications function) 6
- inbound fax requests
 - printing a report of 181
- inbound fax status 87
- inbound fax support 33
- inbound faxes 33
 - changing textual description of 36
- InfoWindow II 3489 display 50
- Integrated Fax Adapter
 - return codes 219
- integration interactive applications 44
- interactive applications
 - integration 44
- interactive fax requests 30
- intersystem communications function (ICF) 6
- introduction 3
- ITU-T ECM 105

J

- job logs 87
- job queue
 - QFAXJOBQ, considerations 84

L

- LAN configuration problems 72
- listing inbound faxes 210
- listing outbound faxes 214
- locating 87
- logging sequence for fax error messages 84
- logo
 - on cover page 20

M

- master list
 - authority
 - creating 56

- master list *(continued)*
 - rules for commands 56
 - working with 56
- entry
 - removing 187
- entry authority
 - granting 56
- fax
 - security 56
 - work with display 213
- owner, changing authority for 56
- updating 39
- member 63
- message
 - format
 - data queue 67
 - send fax data queue 67
 - queue, QFAXOPR 16
 - status
 - error reset 89
 - status, creating 88
 - status, waiting to create 88
- message file
 - QFAXMSG 71
- message format
 - receive fax data queue 68
- message queue
 - QFAXOPR, clearing 84
 - QFAXOPR, deleting 84
 - queue 71
- message queues
 - QFAXOPR 87
- messages
 - AS/400 system 71
 - fax 71
 - fax controller 72
 - for received faxes 33
 - online help for OS/2 72
 - status 88
 - errors occurred 89
 - status, sending 88
- messages, using in programs 178
- messages, when faxes are received 102
- miscellaneous problems 82
- Mixed Object:Document Content Architecture
 - format 36
- modem, 7852-400
 - overview 4

N

Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Facsimile Network (F-Net) 125, 200

O

- OfficeVision
 - document drawer selection 23
 - documents, tab spaces 81
 - Revisable-Form:Document Content Architecture
 - format 10
- online help for OS/2 messages 72

- ORDENTI 43, 46
- Order Entry display 43, 45
- OS/2 messages, online help for 72
- OS/2 run-time errors 72
- outbound fax
 - commands, authority rules 60
 - printing a report of requests 181
 - problems 88
 - sending 15
 - status 87
 - working with 25
- output
 - problems 81
 - queues
 - fax flow through 90
 - printer 176
 - QFFSNDERR 22
 - QFFSNDFAX 21
 - QFFSNDSAV 22
 - sending faxes 214
 - SNDFAX 21
- overlay
 - creating
 - from OS/2 21
 - from Windows 21
- overlay, on cover page 20
- Override with Printer File (OVRPRTF) command 22
- overview
 - 7852-400 modem 4
- overview of the Facsimile Support for AS/400
 - product 6

P

- paper size
 - A4 116
 - B4 116
 - for printing a fax 116
 - legal 116
 - letter 116
 - on FILFAX command 170
 - on PRTFAX command 177
 - output area 170
- PC Organizer (PCO) command 53
- PREFIX parameter 106
- preparing an APAR 85
- Print Advanced Function Printer Data (PRTAFPDTA)
 - command 15
- Print Document (PRTDOC) command 15
- Print Fax (PRTFAX)
 - command 175
 - running from WRKFAX 35
- Print Fax Configuration (PRTFAXCFG) command 179
- Print Fax Status (PRTFAXSTS) command 181
- printer
 - 3816 15
 - 3825 15
 - device, fax 24
 - file
 - DDS example 18
 - default cover page 17
 - QPFFCVP 17

- printer (*continued*)
 - record format 15
- printer output queue 176
- printing
 - fax configuration 179
 - faxes 175
 - faxes as they are received 178
 - outbound and inbound fax request reports 181
 - problems 82
 - received faxes 37, 171
- printing TSI banners 142
- problem analysis 71
- problems
 - analysis, Enhanced Services 87
 - Facsimile Support for AS/400 product 72
 - LAN configuration 72
 - miscellaneous 82
 - outbound fax 88
 - output 81
 - printing 82
 - sending faxes 78
- procedures, service 85
- profile
 - editing fax 165
- program
 - considerations 39
 - ORDENTI 43, 46
 - sample view image 50
 - SBMORDB 47
 - SBMORDI 44, 46
 - to call CRTFAXMLE 41
- program, user receive 48
- program temporary fix (PTF)
 - applying 86
 - removing 86
- PTF 86
- public switched telephone network (PSTN) 4

Q

- QAFFRCV database file 33, 102
- QFAXJOBQ job queue
 - considerations 84
- QFAXMSG message file 71
- QFAXOPR fax operator message queue 16, 71, 87, 129, 203
- QFAXOPR message queue
 - clearing 84
 - deleting 84
- QFAXSBS subsystem 92
- QFDATE transaction log entry 63
- QFDESC transaction log entry 63
- QFDEST transaction log entry 63
- QFDTMF transaction log entry 67
- QFFRCVDQ data queue 34, 103
- QFFSNDERR output queue 22
- QFFSNDFAX output queue 21
- QFFSNDFAX queue
 - considerations 84
- QFFSNDSAV output queue 22
- QFMSG transaction log entry 63
- QFORIG transaction log entry 63

- QFPAGS transaction log entry 63
- QFRSV transaction log entry 63
- QFSU transaction log entry 63
- QFTELT 63
- QFTIME transaction log entry 63
- QFTYPE transaction log entry 63
- QFUSER transaction log entry 63
- QPFFCVP default cover page printer file 17, 127, 202
- queue
 - message, QFAXOPR 87
 - receive data 34
 - receive fax message format 68
 - send fax data, message format 67

R

- RCVFAX data area 48
- receive data queue
 - authority for 34
- receive database file
 - authority for 34
- receive fax
 - data area 48
 - data queue, message format 68
- receive fax data queue 33
 - message format 68
- receive program, user 48
- received faxes
 - authority 57
 - working with 34, 215
- receiving faxes 9, 33
- related printed information 227
- Release Spooled File (RLSSPLF) command 26
- Remove Fax Card (RMVFAXCRD) command 184
- Remove Fax Distribution List (RMVFAXDST)
 - command 186
- Remove Fax Distribution List Entry (RMVFAXDLE)
 - command 185
- Remove Fax Master List Entry (RMVFAXMLE)
 - command 187
- removing
 - fax cards 184
 - fax distribution list 186
 - fax master list entry 187
 - program temporary fix (PTF) 86
- removing entries
 - entries, fax distribution list 185
- report
 - fax usage 13
 - outbound or inbound fax requests 181
- resetting fax status 89
- Revisable-Form:Document Content Architecture
 - format 10, 36
- RSRCNAME parameter 137
- RTNNEGRSP parameter 106
- run-time errors, OS/2 72

S

- SBMORDB program 47
- SBMORDI program 46
- scaling received faxes 170

- screen design aid (SDA) 43
- security 55
 - checking scheme 55
 - commands for 55
 - Enhanced Services 55
- Send Fax (SNDFAX)
 - command 198
 - command interface 7
 - output queues 21
- send fax data queue message format 67
- sending faxes
 - cover page 17
 - description 15, 122, 160, 212, 214
 - problems 78
 - procedure 7
 - WRKFAXQ command 26
- sending status messages 88
- service procedures 85
- SNDFAX command
 - dialing and control codes 199
- spooled files
 - attributes 23, 123
 - deleting from fax output queues 160
 - faxing 7
 - holding 26
 - working with 214
- Start Client Access (STARTPCS) command 53
- Start Fax Support (STRFAXSPT) command 208
- Start PC Command (STRPCCMD) command 51
- Start Service Job (STRSRVJOB) command 86
- status
 - checking 133
 - messages
 - creating 88
 - error reset 89
 - errors occurred 89
 - sending 88
 - waiting to create 88
 - resetting fax 89
- Submit Fax (SBMFAX)
 - command 30, 189
 - command interface 7
- submitting faxes
 - authority 57, 60
 - SBMFAX command 189
 - WRKFAXQ command 26
- subsystem, QFAXSBS 92
- system cleanup 84
- system directory
 - attributes, changing 131

T

- tab spaces in OfficeVision documents 81
- telephone
 - network, public switched 4
 - number length 199
- token-ring
 - adapter address 138
 - LAN 4

- tone routing
 - authority 57
- trace
 - for external fax controller 90
 - setting up 90
- transaction log
 - database file 63
 - entries
 - card or port name 63
 - completion status 63
 - date 63
 - destination 63
 - message identifier 63
 - number of pages 63
 - origin 63
 - QFDATE 63
 - QFDESC 63
 - QFDEST 63
 - QFDTMF 67
 - QFMSG 63
 - QFORIG 63
 - QFPAGS 63
 - QFRSV 63
 - QFSU 63
 - QFTELT 63
 - QFTIME 63
 - QFTYPE 63
 - QFUSER 63
 - reserved 63
 - routing code 67
 - telephone connection, duration of 63
 - time 63
 - type 63
 - user 63
 - file 63
 - members 63
 - overview 13
 - record format 63
- transmitting subscriber identification (TSI) 33, 103
- TSI
 - routing
 - authority 58
 - working with 216
- TSI banner
 - appearance 139
 - specifying 139
- TSI routing
 - authority 57
- twinaxial
 - configuration problems 76
 - connection 4

U

- universally administered address 138
- update flow 40
- usage reports 13
- user receive program 48

V

- view image program, sample 50

W

- waiting to create status message 88
- Work with Configuration Status (WRKCFGSTS)
 - command 92
- Work with Fax Distribution List (WRKFAXDST)
 - command 211
 - display 211
- Work with Fax File Attributes (WRKFAXFA)
 - command 212
 - display 28
- Work with Fax Master List (WRKFAXMST)
 - command 213
 - display 213
- Work with Fax Output Queue (WRKFAXQ)
 - command 26, 214
 - display 25, 26
- Work with Fax Profiles (WRKFAXPRF)
 - command 213
 - display 213
- Work with Faxes (WRKFAX) command 36, 210, 211
- Work with Faxes Display 35
- Work with Received Facsimile display 215
- Work with Received Faxes (WRKRCVFAX)
 - command 87, 215
- Work with TSI Routing (WRKTSIRTG)
 - command 216
 - display 216
- workstations, setting up environment 53

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

**AS/400e
Facsimile Support for AS/400
Programmer's Guide
and Reference
Version 4**

Publication No. SC41-0656-01

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Overall satisfaction	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Accurate	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Complete	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to find	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to understand	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Well organized	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Applicable to your tasks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? Yes No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



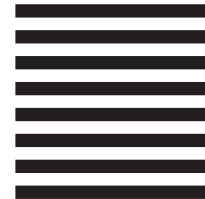
NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

IBM CORPORATION
ATTN DEPT 542 IDCLERK
3605 HWY 52 N
ROCHESTER MN 55901-7829



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



Printed in the United States of America
on recycled paper containing 10%
recovered post-consumer fiber.

SC41-0656-01

